ED 109 438

CE 004 284

TITLE

Roads and Airfields I. (Programed Instruction).

Engineer Subcourse 64-9.

INSTITUTION

Army Engineer School, Fort Belvoir, Wa.

PUB DATE

NOTE

400p.; Edition 9

AVAILABLE FROM

Superintendent of Documents, U. S. Government

Printing Office, Washington; D. C. 20402

EDRS PRICE

MF-\$0.76 HC-\$19.67 PLUS POSTAGE

DESCRIPTORS

*Airports: *Construction :(Process): *Correspondence Courses: Engineering Advation: Maintenance: Military Air. Facilities; Programed Instruction; *Programed

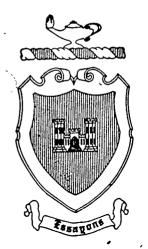
Texts: *Road Construction

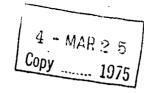
ABS.TRACT

The document is a programed text for a correspondence course in the planning, construction, and maintenance of military roads and airfields: There are seven lessons: construction requirements and design criteria; road reconnaissance and site selection; airfield reconnaissance and site selection; Layout procedures, construction staking, and field methods of alinement; expedient methods of earthwork computation; drainage; and earthwork operations and expedient surfaces. Each lesson begins with a list of objectives and ends with a self-test. Answers to the self-tests are given at the end of the book. (PR)

******* materials not available from other sources. ERIC makes every effort to obtain the best copy available revertheless, items of marginal reproducibility are often encountered and this affects the quality * of the microfiche and hardcopy reproductions ERIC makes available via the ERIC Document Peproduction Service (EDRS). EDRS is not responsible for the quality of the original document. Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made from the original.

ENGINEER
SUBCOURSE '64-9'





ROADS AND AIRFIELDS I

(PROGRAMED INSTRUCTION)

US DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH
FOLICATION & WELFARE
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF
FOLICATION

FUNDAMENTAL SERVICES

CORRESPONDENCE COURSE PROGRAM

U. S. ARMY ENGINEER SCHOOL

FORT BELVOIR, VIRGINIA

5/61) [NOTAN]

EDITION 9 (AUGUST 1974)

INTRODUCTION

CONTENTS

This subcourse provides information used in planning, constructing, and maintaining military roads and airfields. Such information will enable you to better understand and apply the techniques and methods required, and will increase your capability of assuming greater responsibilities.

The subcourse consists of seven lessons and an examination as follows:

- Lesson 1. Construction Requirements and Design Criteria.
 - 2. Road Reconnaissance and Site Selection.
 - 3. Airfield Reconnaissance and Site Selection.
 - 4. Layout Procedures, Construction Staking, and Field Methods of Alinement.
 - 5. Expedient Methods of Earthwork Computation.
 - 6. Drainage.
 - 7. Earthwork Operations and Expedient Surfaces.

Examination.

Twelve credit hours are allowed for the subcourse.

PRESENTATION

This subcourse is **programed**. Test results prove that for certain subjects this technique is more effective than conventional texts; the method is particularly well suited for correspondence courses.

Essentially, programed instruction is the presentation of ideas in a logically sound learning sequence. It presents material in small bits; it provides cues to the right answer; it often repeats key ideas in a different form or context; and it reinforces immediately the student's correct response.

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL

Textual material is divided into frames and panels. A frame presents a single teaching point in a short paragraph, which requires the student to participate in the statement of concept or the answer to the specific problem. A panel is an illustration, a table, or other reference material used by the student in solving problems presented by one or more frames.

HOW TO STUDY

Proceed from frame to frame in numerical order. First, read frame 1-1, filling in the blanks in pencil with the appropriate word(s), numerial quantities, or in some instances formulas, as pertinent. Your writing down the correct answer is an important aspect of the teaching technique. Then, turn to frame 1-2 and check your written response against the correct answer just above the frame. If your response is



i

correct, proceed with frame 1-2. If not, restudy, the frame, erasing your incorrect response and writing the correct answer in the blank(s).

When the frame refers to a panel, turn to the panel for the answer needed to fill ite, the blank(s) correctly. Panels are located after the frames for each lesson.

You will be surprised at how easily you learn to follow the technique and how simple it is to solve the problems.

SELF TESTS

Self Tests are located at the end of each lesson. Work the Self Tests using the reference given with each exercise if necessary. After completing a lesson Self Test, check your answers with the solutions given at the end of the book. Completion of the Self Tests will reinforce your comprehension of the subject.

EXAMINATION

You will not be limited as to the number of hours you may spend on the subcourse, any lesson, or the examination. For statistical purposes, you are required to enter in the proper space on the answer sheet the number of hours spent on the examination.

As soon as you feel ready to take the examination, send the request card to the U.S. Army Engineer School. The grade that you receive on the examination is your grade for the subcourse.



LESSON 1

CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS AND DESIGN CRITERIA

CREDIT HOURS		4
•		
TEXT ASSIGNMENT	Attached	memorandum.

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you should in each of the following subjects, be able to:

- 1. General concepts explain the basic concepts behind T.O. construction of roads and airfields to include simplicity of design, economy of time, proper management and the six principal tasks in road and airfield construction.
- 2. Roads identify road nomenclature and cite military road specifications for the various characteristics.
- 3. Airfields identify components and cite design criteria for TO Army airfields, determine runway lengths making the necessary corrections for factors requiring corrections, and name the type facility required for the various operational and maintenance needs.
- 4. Heliports cite the geometric requirements for heliports with taxi-hoverlanes and with runways and give the design criteria for TO heliports.

CONTENTS

Set 1.	General C	oncepts	/-	´Fra	mes	1-1	to	1.9
•		•	- 1					Ŀ
2.	Roads	-	·*	Fra	mes	1-10	to	1-19
4		_	`	v				~
_{-,} 3.	Airfields			Fra	.me s ,	1-20	to	1.38
	•							,
4.	Heliports			Fra	mes	1-39	to	1-45



ATTACHED MEMORANDUM

Set 1. General Concepts

Frames 1-1 through 1-11 are at top of odd numbered pages.

FR	Ā	M)	E	1	-1

sing certain roads or airfields. The need
element most important. Simple designs
utilizing available materials, a principle
on, save time. Normally, the nearer the
he more vital the
,
,
4 .
*
t, s the shoulders. The minimum width of

roadbed constructed for a two-lane road would be



1. - 3

.10 (1-22)

FRAME 1-23.

(1)-8 (2) 2 (1-33)

FRAME 1-34.

Every Army landing field requires certain facilities for operation and maintenance. Operational facilities are those required for direct support of aircraft operations (landing, takeoff, and in-flight control). Maintenance facilities are those required for _______ support. (time) (1-1)

FRAME 1-2.

Time is saved by sound planning and by skillful management of manpower, equipment, and construction materials. Having the necessary dump trucks available as needed is an example of management; building a road to the simplest design practicable is an example of

31 (1-12)

FRAME 1-13.

1

(3000) (1-23)

FRAME, 1-24.

The surface of the support type runway discussed in the previous frame would be constructed of portable materials, probably landing mat. The runway grade would have to provide a minimum sight distance of one-half the runway length plus ______ feet.

(indirect) (1-84)

FRAME 1-35.

The control tower, runway lights, and the flight operations tent or building would be examples of the operational facilities (direct support). Hangers and fuel storage structures would be examples of ______ facilities (indirect support).

(sound) (planning) (1-2)

FRAME 1-3.

The location of roads and airfields depends on the military necessity. However, dense forest and rough terrain require extensive clearing and earthmoving, while use of existing facilities usually saves time. If the military situation permits, good planning generally means maximum use of ______ facilities.

(base) (1-13)

FRAME 1-14.

The stopping sight distance (SSD) is the longest distance in which a driver, whose eyes are 4.5 feet above the road surface, can see an object 4 inches high on the road. Absolute minimum SSD is ______ feet.



500 (1-24)

FRAME 1-25.

•	The	runwa	y for a	rear	área	Aŗmy	airfield	must	be at	least	(1).		
												percent	
no 1	nore	thæn	(3)			_ perc	ent.		•			/	

(maintenance) (1-35)

FRAME 1-36.

Three types of support facilities are installed at Army airfields in the theater of operations — field, intermediate and temporary — depending on the situation. These classes do not necessarily correspond to the three design categories — forward, support, and rear. Panel 1-6 is applicable to frames 1-35 through 1-38. Note, for example, that the structure used for a flight operations center for field and intermediate support facilities is a _____.



(existing) (1-3)

FRAME 1-4.

Safety and durability are less important in military construction than in civilian construction. Safety factors are low in keeping with the inherent risks of war. The degree of permanence required in any military road or airfield is relatively small; construction specifications, therefore, usually permit a low durability requirement. Critical time can be saved by constructing with minimum qualities of (1) ______ and (2) ______

200 (1-14)

FRAME 1-15.

Roads are crowned to drain the surface course. If a graveled traveled way were 23 feet wide, the minimum height of crown would be (1) ______ inches and maximum required would be (2) ______ inches.



(1) 72 (2) 0.5 (3) 2 (1-25)

FRAME 1-26.

For a support type airfield requiring a 3000-foot runway, the total length of the flightstrip will be ______ feet.

(tent) (1-36)

FRAME 1-37.

For intermediate facilities, trucks or trailers are used for the lights and transformer vault, the control tower, and the ______ equipment.

(1) safety (2) darability (1-4)

FRAME 1-5.

Building a road or runway to permit early use while further completion continues is called stage construction. Thus, one lane of a two-lane road is surfaced for its entire length (or in long sections) before the second lane is completed. Constructing and erecting route marking signs (an engineer task) before a road is open to traffic would violate the principal of _________ construction.

(1)
$$\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{23}{2} \right) = 5\frac{3}{4}$$
 (2) $\frac{3}{4} \left(\frac{23}{2} \right) = 8\frac{5}{8}$ (1-15)

FRAME 1-16.

A straight section of road is referred to as a tangent. Grade change in elevation is expressed as a percentage; that is, a 5-foot vertical change in elevation per 100 feet of horizontal length is a 5 percent grade. The normal maximum grade for a tangent is ______ percent.

3600 (1-26)

ARAME- 1.27.

Eot a support type surfield to be used by 0-1 aircraft only, the approach zone extends, (1) ______ feet beyond the end of the flightstrip. A glide angle ratio of 1 foot descent every (2) ______ feet is required.

(communications) (1-37)

FRAME 1-38.

For field construction, maintenance and supply hangers are not provided.

For temporary facilities, the structure provided is normally ______.

(stage), (1-5)

FRAME 1-6.

Although engineer units are responsible for maintaining military roads, they provide only major maintenance of Army airfields; that is, work beyond the capability of the using unit. Minor maintenance of Army airfields, therefore, must be done by units ______ the installation.

10 (1-16)

FRAME 1-17.

Superelevation refers to the slope of a road around a curve; that is, difference in elevation between "outside" and "inside" edges of the traveled way. Maximum superelevation for a 23-foot traveled way would be _______

(1) 500·(2) 20 (1-27) FRAME 1-28. f

A support type Army airfield is to be built for use by OV-1 aircraft.	The
taxiway must be built at least (1) feet wide, (2)	with
foot shoulders and (3)	foot
lateral clearance.	

Set 4. Heliports

(prefab) (1-38)

FRAME 1-39.

Panels 1-7 through 1-9 (applicable to frames 1-39 through 1-45) show the layout and design criteria for Army heliports, which are similar to airfields. For support type construction, runways are (1) ______ feet long and (2) _____ feet wide for CH-54 type helicopters.



(using) (1-6)

FRAME 1-7.

There are six principal tasks in road and airfield construction: clearing, grubbing, stripping, earthwork, drainage, and surfacing. Clearing is the removal of timber and surface boulders; stripping is the removal of objectionable top soil. Removal of stumps and roots is called ______.

 $23 \times_{\bullet} 1\frac{1}{4} = 28\frac{3}{4} \ (1-17)$

FRAMÉ 1-18.

Absolute minimum horizontal curve radius is, of course, the turning radius of the using vehicles. The specified minimum horizontal radius produces a hairpin turn: it is ______ feet.



fe	et, and the apror	ield the apron l e ng 1 width required is		
feet.			F	٥
,			•	
à		• *		ø
_	·		•,	
	,		•	•
*		·		ı
V.	,	•		
. ·	,	•	•	
,	•			>

FRAME 1-40.

For a support type heliport, the maximum longitudinal grade for the runway is plus or minus (1) _____ percent, as compared with plus or _____ percent for runways on support typé airfields minus (2) designed for O-1, aircraft.

(grubbing) (1-7)
'FRAME 1-8.

Earthwork, commonly known as grading, essentially means cutting off high spots and filling in low places to get a grade level enough. It is the most important construction task because the most time and effort are normally required. Since military roads are built on the principle of stage construction, they are planned so that they may be put into emergency service at any stage after ______

is completed.

150 (1-18)

FRAME 1-19.

The elevation difference in a shoulder of a medium width road is ______ inches.

1 - 17

(1)	1920	(2)	240	(1-29)
-----	------	-----	------------	--------

FRAME 1-30.

Runway length must be adequate for the takeoff ground ru	in (TGR) of the
using aircraft. This will, under some conditions, exceed the n	ninimum runway
lengths given in Panel 1-4. Panel 1-5 (applicable 40 frames 1-3	0 through 1-33)
explains the method for determining runway lengther different	conditions. The
runway length is corrected for altitude by increasing the TGR	by (1)
percent for each (2)	foot increase in
altitude, above (3) feet.	

(1) 2 (2) 10 (1-40)

FRAME 1-41.

Support type heliport runway shoulders are built (1) ______ feet wide. Length of overrun provided is (2) ______ feet; minimum runway lateral clearance is (3) _____ feet for CH-54 helicopters.

(grading) (1-8).

FRAME 1-9.

Set 3. Airfields

 $\frac{3}{1} \times 4 = 3 \ (1-19)$

FRAME 1-20.

Panel 1-3 shows the components of an airfield. Runways, taxiways, aprons, and hardstands normally have a pavement built on a stabilized or compacted subgrade. As in road construction (panel 1-1) airfield pavements include a surface course over a ______ course of selected materials with high bearing capacity.

(1) 10 (2) 1000 (3) 1000 (1-30) FRAME 1-31.

Runway length must also be increased as temperature increases. I	f the TGR
is less than 5,000 feet, the runway length must be increased by (1)	
percent for each ten degree increase in temperature	above (2)
degrees.	

(1) 10 (2) 100 (3) 135 (1-41)

FRAME 1-42.

Taxiways for support type Army heliports to be used by CH-47 helicopters are built (1) ______ feet wide with (2) _____ feet lateral clearance.



Set 2. Roads

(simple) (1-9)

FRAME 1-10.

Panels 1-1 and 1-2 combine cross sectional and perspective views with the specifications for a military road. By referring to them in study frames 1-10 through 1-19, you will become acquainted with the more important construction requirements for military roads. You learn, for example, that a turnout is required every ______ mile when building a single-lane road.

(base) (1-20)

FRAME 1-21.

Shoulders and overruns are normally constructed of materials found in place at the worksite; only clearing and obstacle removal are necessary in the approach zones. In the approach zone, (panel 1-3) obstacles extending above the prescribed angle must be removed.





(1) 4 (2) 59 (1-31)

FRAME 1-32.

Required runway length, based upon aircraft TGR	t, is further increased by
addition of a safety factor. This safety factor is (1)	
for rear area airfields and (2)	
area airfields.	2

(1) 25 (2) 10 (3) 125 (1-42)

FRAME 1-43.

For support type Army heliports designed for OH-6A helicopters, parking pads are (1) ______ feet in length and (2) ______ feet in width. Center-to-center spacing of these pads is (3) ______ feet.



1/4 (1-10)

FRAME 1-11.

The roadway is the width that includes the roadbed plus cut slopes or fill slopes. Specifications require that an additional _____ feet be cleared on each side of the roadway.

Turn back to bottom of page 1-3.

(glide) (1-21)

FRAME 1-22.

Depending on the time available and the intended usage, Army airfields are built to one of three design classes: forward, support, and rear. Panel 1-4 (applicable to frames 1-22 through 1,29) is a table showing these airfield design criteria. Note, for example, that minimum width of shoulders for rear area runways is ______ feet.

Turn back to top of page 1-4.

(1) 1.5 (2) 1.25 (1-32)

FRAME 1-33.

The term "effective gradient" means the maximum difference in elevation along a runway, divided by the length of the runway, and is expressed in percentage. If the effective gradient of a runway exceeds two percent, the runway length must be increased by (1) _______ percent for each one percent it exceeds (2) ______ percent.

Turn back to bottom of page 1-4.

(1) 12 (2) 12 (3) 55 (1-43)

FRAME 1-44.

For all type of heliports, the minimum length of the approach-departure zone is (1) ______ feet, and the minimum length of the takeoff safety zone is (2) ______ feet.



(1) 1500 (2) 500 (1-44)

FRAME 1-45.

The maximum transverse grade for helicopter taxi, hoverlanes is (1)

________ percent, and the minimum transverse grade for helicopter taxi hoverlanes is (2) _______ percent.

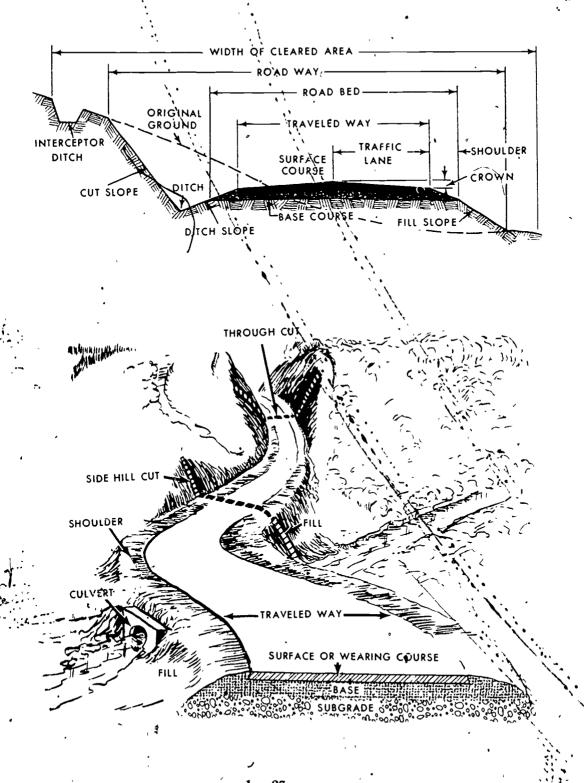


(1) 5 (2) 1.5 (1-45)

END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW



Panel 1-1. Typical cross section and perspective illustrating road nomenclature.

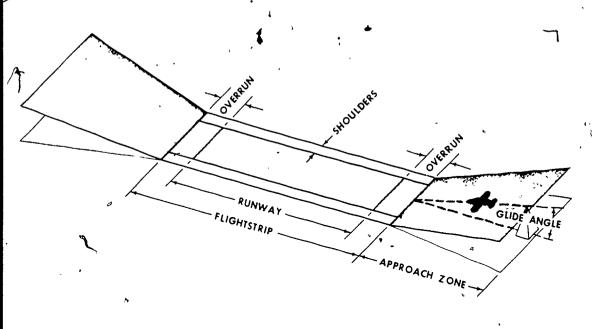


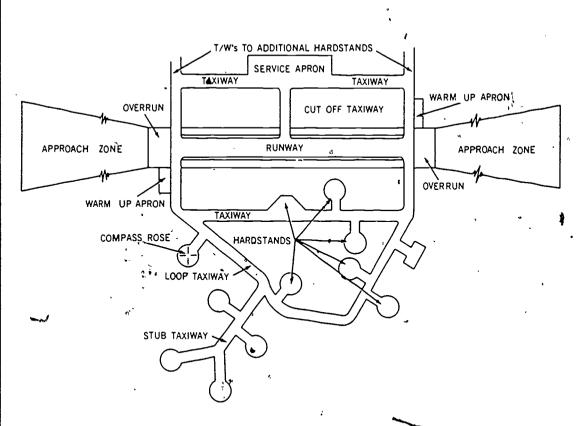


Panel 1-2. Military road specifications.

		<u> </u>
	Characteristics	Specifications
1.	WIDTH: Traveled way (single lane) Traveled way (two lanes) Shoulders (each side) Clearing	Minimum — 11½ feet. Minimum — 23 feet. Minimum — 4 feet. Minimum — 6 feet on each side of roadway.
2.	ALINÉMENT:	
	ades:	
	Absolute maximum Normal maximum Desirable maximum	Lowest maximum gradability of vehicles for which road is built. 10 percent. Tangènts and gentle curves, less than 6 percent; sharp curves, less than
		4 percent.
	Horizontal curve radius	Minimum — 150 feet.
	Vertical curve length:	100 6-14
	Invert curves	100 feet minimum for each 4 percent algebraic difference in grades. 125 feet minimum for each 4 percent
	Sight distance:	algebraic difference in grades.
	Stopping Passing	Absolute minimum — 200 feet. Absolute minimum — 350 feet.
3.	LOAD CAPACITY:	
`	Road proper	Sustain design numbers of equivalent 18,000-pound operations/day.
	Bridges	Accommodate using traffic.
4.	SLOPES:	
	Shoulders Crown (gravel and dirt) Crown (paved) Superelevation Cut Fill	34 inch per foot. 1½ to 34 inch per foot to €. 1¼ to ½ inch per foot to €. 1¼ to 1¼ inch per foot. Variable. Variable.
5 .	MISCELLANEOUS:	,
•	Overhead clearance Traffic volume Turnouts (single lane)	Minimum — 14 feet. 2,000 vehicles per day. Minimum — every ¼ mile.
	, 1—:	28

Panel 1-3. Components of an Army airfield.





1 - 29

32



Panel 1-4. Theater of operations Army airfield design criteria.

Item	m verification	FORWARD	/ARD	SUPPORT	¥	REAR
No.		0-1	. 1-yo	0-1	OV-1	0-1/QV-1
1.	Length (minimum)	750′	2500′	1000′	3000′	3000′
જ	Takeoff ground run1	390′	2000′	390′	۶ 2000v	2000′
တ်	Safety factor	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.50
, 4	Width (minimum)	50′	60′	50′	,d9	72′ .
્યું	Shoulder width (minimum)	.~. N/A	10′	N/A	10,	10′
ဖ်	Lateral clearance (center line of runway to near edge of taxiway or fixed obstable)	75′	230′	100′	230′	236′
7.	Runway surfacing	Membrane/ landing mat	Membrane/ landing mat	Membrane/ landing mat	Membrane/ landing mat	Membrane/ landing mat
∞	Longitudinal grade ' (maximum)	± 10%	± 5%	± 10%	± 4%	± 3%
9.	Maximum grade change per 100 ft	2.0%	. 2.0%	2.0%	1.5%	1.5%
10.	Minimum sight distance across vertical curves (height of eye—5' to a point 5' above runway surface)	½ runway length	'', runway length	500' + ½ runway length	$500' + \frac{1}{2}$ runway length	$500' + \frac{1}{2}$ runway length
	O 1 Aimonoft in linican actomical					

1 - 30

33

0-1 Aircraft in liaison category

OV-1 Aircraft in surveillance category

Panel 1-4. Continued.

Item		FOR	FORWARD	SUF	SUPPORT	REAR
S O	KUNWAX	0-1	0V-1	0-1	1-AO .	\$-1/OV-1
n.	Minhum distance PI to PI on vertical curves	200,	200′	,009	,009	800′
12.	Transverse grade	5.0%	0.5 - 3.0%	5.0%	0.5 - 3.0%	0.5 - 2.0%
13.	Transverse shoulder grade	N/A	1.5 - 5.0%	N/A	1.5 - 5.0%	1.5 - 5.0%
14.	Parallel runways (minimum spacing; center-to-center)	200′	200′	300′	300′	,000
15.	Cleared areas maximum slope	N/A	5%	N/A	2%	5%
	TAXIWAYS					
16.	Width	N/A	30′	N/A	30′	, 36′
17.	Shoulder width (minimum)	N/A	10′	N/A	10′	10′
18.	Lateral clearance	N/A	65′	N/A	. 65′	65′
19.	Longitudinal grade (maximum)	N/A	5%	N/A	. 5%	5%
20.	Transverse grade	N/A	0.5 - 3.0%	N/A	0.5 - 3.0%	0.5 - 2.0%
21.	Transverse shoulder grade	N'A	1.5 - 5.0%	N/A	1.5 - 5.0%	1.5 - 5.0%
22.	Taxiway turn radii (minifium)	N/A	70,	N/A	,02	02
					7	

Panel 1-4. Continued.

Item		FOI	FORWARD .		SUPPORT	REAR
No.	KUNWAX	0-1	1-A0	0-1	OV-1	0-1/0V-1
	APRONS	*				
23.	Number of aircraft	N/A	8	· N/A	20	32
ক্	Apron length	N/A	600′	N/A	1500′	/ 1920′
25.	Apron width	N/A	120′	N/A	120′	270′
26.	Transverse grade	. N/A	1.5 - 5.0%	N/A	1.5 - 5.0%	1.5 - 5.0%
27.	Lateral clearance, apron edge to fixed obstacle	N/A	45′	N/A	. 50′	50′
28.	Warm-up apron width	N/A	100′	N/A	100′	100′
,	OVERRUN				a.	·
29.	Length from end of runway	N/A	200,	N/A	300′	300′
30.	Width at end of runway	N/A	,09°	A/N	,09	72′
31.	Longitudinal grade (maximum)	N/A	5.0%	N/A·	2.0%	2.0%
32.	Transverse grade	N/A	same as run- way and shoulders	N/A	same as run- way and shoulders	same as run- way and shoulders

Iter	. ;	FOF	FORWARD	SUP	SUPPORT	REAR
o,		. 0-1	0V-1	0-1	r-AQ ·	0-1/OA-1
	APPROACH ZONE			r		
33.	33. Length (from end of flight strip)	500′	1500′	,200	2000	2,500′
*	Width (at end of fight-strip)	150′	200	. 150′	260′	272′

1,500

1,500′

500′

1000′

200

Width at outer end

85.

Glide angle (ratio)

36.

1 - 33

36

20:1

30:1

20:1

20:1

15;1

^{&#}x27;Runway length shall be computed from takeoff ground run distance, corrected for temperature, altitude, gradient, and safety factor, as indicated in panel 1-5. The computed length, or the minimum runway length as given in line 1, whichever is the greater, will then be used.

Panel 1-5. Runway length determination for airfields in the theater of operations.

	•	
1)	TAKEOFF GROUND RUN	Takeoff ground run (TGR) for individual aircraft is shown in panel 1-4.
2)	ALTITUDE CORRECTION	Increase the takeoff ground run (TGR) by $+10\%$ for each 1000 ft increase in altitude above 1000 ft.
3)	TEMPERATURE CORRECTION*	Increase the corrected runway length, obtained from the previous computation, by +7% for each 10°F increase in temperature above 59°F, if takeoff ground run is greater than 5000 ft. Increase by 4% per 10° above 59° if takeoff ground run is less than 5000 ft.
4)	SAFETY FACTOR	Multiply the corrected runway length from the pre- vious computation by 1.5 for Rear Area Airfields and 1.25 for Support and Forward Area Airfields.
5)]	EFFECTIVE GRADIENT CORRECTION	Increase the corrected runway length, obtained from the previous computation, by $+8\%$ for each 1% of effective gradient over 2% . Using the above runway length, the effective gradient can be determined from the profile of the airfield.
6)	ROUND UP	'The final runway length will be the takeoff ground run corrected (if required) for conditions of altitude, temperature, safety factor, and effective gradient, and raised to the next larger 100 feet
7)	COMPARE WITH MINIMUM REQUIRED	Compare calculated length obtained from the previous computation with the minimum length required as shown in panel 1-4. Use the greater value.

^{*} The temperature to be considered is the mean temperature for the warmest period during which operations will be conducted from the airfield.



Panel 1-5. Continued.

Illustrative example. The design of a support area, surveillance type airfield has been requested.

The following additional information is supplied.

Altitude of the proposed site

Mean hottest temperature

The effective gradient

1600 feet
79°F
3%

- 1. Takeoff Ground Run (TGR) = 2000' (Panel 1-4)
- 2. Altitude Correction

$$(1600' - 1000') \times \frac{10\%}{1000'} = 6\%$$
 $1.06 \times 2000 = 2120'$

3. Temperature Correction

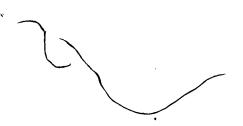
4. Safety Factor

$$1.25 \times 2290 = 2863'$$

5. Effective Gradient

$$(3\% - 2\%) \times \frac{8\%}{1\%} = 8\%$$
 $1.08 \times 2863 = 3092'$

- 6. Round up 3100'
- 7. Check Minimum Req'd (Panel 1-4) = 3000' Select 3100' as appropriate length

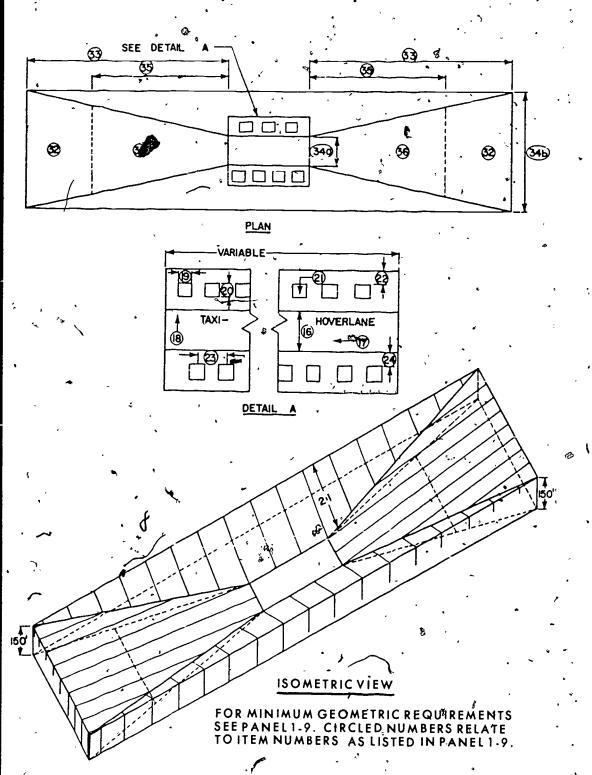


Panel 1-6. Operational and maintenance facilities, Army airfields and heliports.

	Facility	,	Freid	Intermediate	Temporary
1	Control tower structure		None	Truck or trailer mpunted	Frame
જં	Wind indicator		Sock	Sock	Sock
တ်	Runway lighting $\stackrel{<}{\circ}$,	Laid on ground surface	Laid on ground surface	Laid on ground surface
, 4	Navigational aids	•	Tent	, Tent	Frame
ĸ.	Flight operations center		Tent	Tent	Prefab
9	Communications		Tent ~	Truck or trailer mounted	Frame
r.	Hangars, maintenance, and supply		None	Tent	Prefab
, * 5	Storage facilities, unit supply .	,	Tent	Tent	Prefab
6	Fuël storage		None	None	Fenced area
10.	Fire fighting equipment		None	Tent	Prefab
11.	Runway marking		Laid on ground surface	Laid on ground surface	Laid on ground surface
12.	Personnel messes and quarters		Tent *	Tent	Prefab
13.	Cargo handling facilities	-	None	Tent	Prefab
14.	Airfield lighting and transformer vault	ult	Lean - to	Trailer mounted	Shed

1'- 36

Panel 1-7. Geometric requirements for heliports with taxi-hoverlanes.

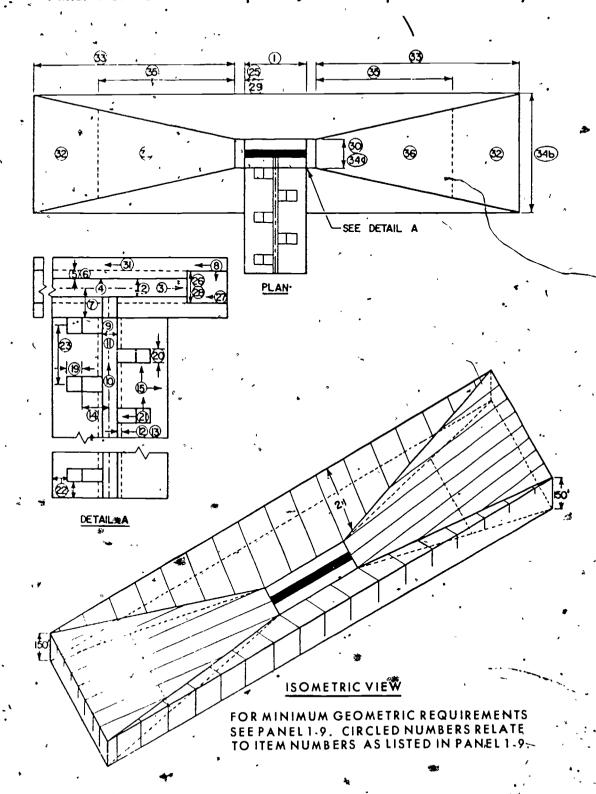


1 - 37

40



Panel 1-8. Geometric requirements for heliports with runways.



Panel 1-9. Theater of operations Army heliport design criteria.

				•		1								•
•	Item			Forw	Forward area			lodd a s	Support area		_	Krar	Kear area	
<i>;</i>	ž	ملتر ب	ОН-6А	CH-1D	CH-47	CH-54	OH-6A	UH-113	CH-47	CH-54	OH-6A	CH-1D	CH-47	CH-54
		•		H	Heliport runways	runwa	sĥ		,		_			
	-	Length, ft'							450	450		1	450	450
•	7	Width, ft				.			25	20			40	90
	က	Longitudinal grade of runways and shoulders, %	.	-			1	,	+2	+2			+1 2	+ 5
1-3	, 4,	Transverse grade of runway, % max min		1					1.5 7	1.5		.	1.5	
9	5	Shoulder width, ft		-	ľ				10	. OI			25	. 25
٨	9	Transverse grade of shoulders, %, max min			•		,		໌ ຕ ຕ	ຫ ໍ ຜ			, , m M	w 0
	7	Clearance from runway £ to fixed and/or movable obstacles, ft			.				125	135			125 -	135
	∞ `	8 Cleared areas, slope, % max						-	rc	rC	.	.	5	, ,
										ŀ				

'Where runway length is not shown, takeoff and landing is on taxi-hoverlane.

•		•		•			•							
•	1			. Forwa	. Forward area	<u>.</u>		das	Support area			Rear area	area	
	No.	Description	V9-H0.	UH-1D	CH-47	CH-63	OH-8A	αι-нα`, ν	CH-47	CH-54	0Н-6А	СИ-1В	СН-47	CH-54
·				H	Heliport tax	taxiw	ays.	1						
	ص م	Width, ft	.			7		. - 	25	40			40	09
	ed, ,	10 Longitudinal grades of taxiways and shoulders, %							N	. 81			87	83
⁴ 1 -		11 Transverse grade of taxiway, % max min			11				i. ič rė	1.5 .5			1.5	rc. rc.
- 40	12	Shot					: ‡.		10	10			22	22
,	13	Transverse grades of taxiway shoulders, % max min				.41	· .			8 2			, w w	23
	, 14	Clearance from taxiway £ to fixed and/or movable obstacles, ft							125	135			125	135
	15	Grade in any direction in taxiway cleared area, %							 	ນ			ro _s	ວ
					Taxi-hoverlane	overl	3ne							

Taxi-Hoverlane is used for takeoff and landing where provided

16 Width ft

75 140 \\$80

Panel 1-9. Continued.

lten.	Description		Forwa	Forward area	4	-	oddns,	Support area		<i>(</i> .	Rear	Rear area	
ė	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	OH-8A	UH-1D	GH:47	CH-64	₩0-но	TH-1D	ея. 41	CH-64	OH-6A	UH-11D	CH-47	CH-54
	•	11 (mm) 11 (mm)	Taxi-h	överlan	Taxi-hoverlane (continued)	tinued					4	1	
17	Longitudinal grade of Taxi-hoverlane, % max`	10	10	, 10	10	ည	ນ	, ro	ئىر ،	10	ັກວ	, ro	ر بر
18	Transverse grade of Taxi-hoverlane, %				- ,	•		<i>/</i> ·				•	
	max min	ے بن بن	ب بن در	ر بن در	ر بن بر	τυ π	ກວ ກ	ຸ ໝໍ ກ	ر د دیر	ر بن بر	تن ت	ت ت	, 10 i
	•	9:	7.7	C.	L.J	7:0	c.1 -	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	r.5
	. ,		Heli	Heliport parking	arking	pad		•					
19	Length, ft	12	20	20	20	12	20	20	20	25	40	20	100
50	Width, ft	12	20	22	20	12	20	25	50	22	40	100	100
21	Parking pad grade in any direction, % max min	ယ က	ယ. ကဲ	ယ ကဲ	လ ကံ	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	, 5.5	1.5
22	Lateral clearance from rear and sides of parking pad to fixed and/or movable obstacles except other aircraft, ft	25	45	65	55	25	55		65	30	65	100	55
23	C-C spacing of parking pads, ft	• 40	75	150	150	55	80	175	175	22	80	175	175
										Ì			

1 – 41

44

ERIC

Panel 1-9. Continued.

		•												
				Forwa	Forward, area		•	Suppo	Support area			Rear area	area	
	No.	Description	ОН-6А	CH-1D	CH-41	CH-54	OH-6A	UH-1D	CH-47	CH-54	0Н-6А	ат-на	CH-47	CH-54
			He	liport	Heliport parking pad (continued)	ped	contin	(Por			/			
	24	Snacing from edge of	10	20	20	20	10	20	20	20	10	20	20	20
•	•	Taxi-hoverlane to edge of pagking pad, ft								4				~
		6.6.4			Heliport overrun	overr	un				U	1		
	25	٠. ٽ	İ						100	100		/	100	100
` 1	26								Same	as run	vay p <u>l</u> ı	Same as runway plus shoulders	lders	
	27								8	7	.		73	7
2	28	Transverse grade, % max min		M		-			2 33	m 0			8 83	ಣನ
	_				Heliport clear zone	clear	zone	•						
.	29	Length, ft							100	100			100	100
	ရှိ. ဓိ						-		250	270			250	270
• للو •					7.		$\uparrow $		က	ດ				ល
•			.	eliport	Heliport approach-departure zone	ch-dep	arture						·>	
	32	Approach-departure surface ratio	0:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1	10:1
													•	•

Panel 1-9. Continue

,	ltem Secription		Forw	Forward area	•		oddns	Support area	-		Rear	Rear area	
		OH-6A	ar-H2	СН-47	CH-64	OH-6A UH-1D CH-47 CH-64 OH-6A UH-1D	CH-1D	CH-47	CH-54	0H-6A	CH-110	CH-47	CH-64
		Heliport approach-departure zone (continued)	approa	ch-dep	arture	zone (continu	led)					
33	33 Length, ft	1500		1500	1500	1500 1500 1500 1500 1500 1500	1500	1500		رخ 	1500 1 35 1500 1500	1500	1500
34	34 Width, ft at end of clear zone or	. 75	140	180	200	100	200	250	270	. 007	200	, 250	270
	Taxi-hoverlane at outer end	850	850	850	850	850	850	850	850	850	850	850	850
			Helipor	t take	off saf	Heliport takeoff safety zone	e	•				•	ı
35	35 Length, ft	200		200 200		200 200	200	200	200	200	200	200	500
36	36 Width, ft				Sar	Same as approach-departure zone	pproac	h-depa	rture 2		<i>j</i> .		
37	37 Width, ft'	11.5		Service 11.5	Service roads:	· Service roads: 11.5 11.5 11.5 11.5	11.5	5.11.5	<u>.</u>	93	93	93	o c

^{&#}x27;Roads should be located so as to require the least engineer effort.

SELF TEST

Note: The following exercises comprise a self test. The figures following each question refer to a frame or panel containing information related to the question. Write your answer in the space below the question. When you have finished answering all the questions for this lesson, compare your answers with those given for this lesson in the back of this booklet. Do not send in your solutions to these review exercises.

		~ 1				
				•		
2. Outline the splanation of each.	ix principal task (frame 1-7, 1-8)	s in√road ar	d airfield (construction	giving a	a short
		ý				
					_	•
	·					
3. Make a sket bgrade. (panel 1-1)	ch showing the	relationshi	p of the w	earing surf	ace, bas	e, and
3. Make a sket bgrade. (panel 1-1)	ch showing the	relationshi •	p of the w	earing surf	ace, bas	e, and
3. Make a sket bgrade. (panel 1-1)	ch showing the	relationshi •	p of the w	earing surf	ace, bas	e, and
bgrade. (panel 1-1)				;4	-	
3. Make a sket ubgrade. (panel 1-1) 4. Maximum si neant by supereleva	perelevation fo	r a 23-foot		;4	-	
abgrade. (panel 1-1)	perelevation fo	r a 23-foot		;4	-	



lnone	5. Give the minimu: el 1-2)	m widths of	the traveled	l way, shoul	ders, and	clearing.
(parre	1 1-2)					7.
	<u> </u>					
			•	•		
		-				
						_
	,	•				
grade	6. Describe the spec s. (panel 1-2)					naximum
	<u> </u>					
					,	
		,			,	
			<u> </u>			
	•	*. •		•		
with 1	respect to curve leng	th. (panel 1-2				
				•		
				7		
	'					
	,	•	•			
	8. Give the specificat	ions of the slo	pes of a road	with a paved	d crown. (p	oanel 1-2
1		1	ţ		,	
		•				
						
one?	9. Where is the ove (panel 1-3)	rrun situated	with respec	ct to the ru	nway and	approach
		~	,			`
				- -		
	٠				<u> </u>	
•	*		•	-		
						
	•					

- 10. Support your choice of one of the following alternatives for a road approximately seven miles long:
 - a. construction through relatively flat, wooded area
 - b. rehabilitating an existing dirt road



c. building a straight-line route over whated. constructing over hilly, treeless terrain	' (frame 1-3
:,	
	•
11. The tactical situation requires the constructions in length. What is the minimum number of turn ermit use of the road in both directions? (frame 1)	nouts that should be provided to
•	<u> </u>
	
	٠
12. The minimum runway length required for tarmy airfield is 3000 feet. The runway plus overruns ong? (frame 1-23 and panels 1-3 and 1-4).	he critical aircraft to use a read s will have to be how many fee
	•
	<u></u>
13. The takeoff ground run for an OV-1 aircraft e at 3,000 feet altitude, and the mean hottest temperate required runway length when corrections are manly? (frames 1-30, 1-31 and panel 1-5)	ature will be <mark>69°F., what will</mark> be
	
	
14. Corrections are also made to include a safe unway gradient. If the runway described in the prec nd the effective gradient is 3%, what will the fina bounded off to the next larger 100 feet? (frame 1-32	eding exercise is in a rear area al corrected runway length be
 -	
· 🖚	•

	What is the l panels 1-7, 1	suppo rt A	rmy helip	ort runw	ay plus o	overruns?	(frame
•	•						
-	•		•				<u>-</u>
						•	
	What is the area? (panel	width, in	feet, for	a service	e road fo	or a helipor	t in a
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	 	· ·	i	e g kyen		



LESSON 2.

RECONNAISSANCE AND LOCATION OF ROADS

CREDIT_HOURS	1	•
TEXT ASSIGNMENT	Attached	Memorandum

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able, in the following subject areas to:

- 1. General principles of reconnaissance Explain the purposes of a general reconnaissance and a road reconnaissance; discuss the following as pertaining to a location reconnaissance: topography, soil bearing capacity, stability, drainage, use of a geologist, the four considerations of rock formation, and the two methods used to determine road location.
- 2. Hasty location methods Discuss hasty location considerations, the use of maps and aerial photos, and the instruments needed to apply these methods (magnetic compass, hand level, metallic tape, and clinometer).
- 3. Deliberate location methods Give the definition of deliberate location methods; describe the planning process to include the use of control points, the further subdivision into primary, intermediate, and secondary control features, alternate plans, and ground reconnaissance.
- 4. Final location Describe the process by which final location is chosen explaining the use of the preliminary survey which utilizes terrain features, tentative center line, soil classification, and maps to arrive at the final location; also the two methods used to actually set the final location of the road.

CONTENTS

		•	Frames
Set 1.	General Principles of Reconnaissance		2-1 to 2-23
2.	Hasty Location Methods		2-24 to 2-28
3.	Deliberate Location Methods	<u> </u>	2-29 to 2-30
4.	Final Location		2-37 to·2-4

ô

Set 1. General Principles of Reconnaissance

FRAME 2-1.

The purpose of reconnaissance is to determine the best possible route for a specific military need. The tactical commander must have vehicular mobility between certain points. The engineer must find the most practical route to meet that tactical requirement; that is, one which will require the least cost in manhours, equipment, and construction materials. He makes a _______ to determine the most ______ route.

4

(alinement) (2-12)

FRAME 2-13.

The bearing capacity, stability, and drainage characteristics of soils are important considerations. The organic soils of a swampy area are the most difficult to drain and have the poorest bearing capacity. Excessive engineer effort and possible road failure can normally be avoided when the types of ______ are accurately identified during a location reconnaissance.



2 - 3

(hasty) (location) (2-24)

FRAME 2-25.

Hasty location made from a study of maps and aerial photographs, is supplemented by ground reconnaissance. The ______ reconnaissance is made by riding or walking over the ground; sometimes portions of a route can be located by observation from a high point of ground.

Set 4., Final Location

(map) (2-36)

FRAME 2-27.

Usually, a preliminary survey (panel 2-3) is essential to the selection of a
final location for the proposed road. In addition to the plotting of terrain features,
a tentative is established, critical are
plotted, and the encountered are classified.

(reconnaissance) (practical) (2-1)

FRAME 2-2.

In a tactical situation, the engineer is rarely concerned with the dollar cost of the road he constructs. Other assets, however, must be considered because they are always in short supply for example, man-hours. The engineer must get his work done with maximum savings in _______, equipment, and construction materials.

(soils) (2-13)

FRAME 2-14.

(ground) (2-25)

FRAME 2-26.

Frequently hasty location occurs simultaneously with construction operations. The engineer in charge may have a map in one hand while indicating the road alinement to equipment operators with the other. In keeping with tactical time limitations, construction operations are often conducted the hasty location of a road.

(centerline) (elevations) (soils) (2-37)

FRAME 2-38.

Frames 2-38 through 2-40 are also based on panel 2-3. Of particular importance are those terrain features which influence the location of the and the determination of sufficient necessary for _ estimates.



(man-hours) (2-2)

FRAME 2-3.

All phases of new road construction require great amounts of engineer effort — particularly clearing, drainage, and earthwork. Therefore, existing roads can usually be repaired and improved far more economically than new roads can be built because the heavy initial work is already done. The first purpose of reconnaissance is to find ______ roads that can be made to meet the tactical need.

(natural) (drainage) (2-14)

FRAME 2-15.



(simultaneously) (2-26) FRAME 2-27. A magnetic compass, hand level or clinometer, and metallic tape are the only surveying instruments normally used in establishing a location. These instruments are useful in obtaining data concerning alinement and grades. (centerline) (cross sections) (earthworth) (2-38) FRAME 2-39.

All pertinent data is plotted on a _____ which is drawn to

summarize the preliminary survey. Soil classification data at _____ are included on the map.

(existing) (2-3)

FRAME 2-4.

A road reconnaissance is made to obtain information about existing roads, primarily for immediate use and establishment of a route. It may include estimates of the practicability of improvement, and the engineer work in conditioning a road to accommodate specified traffic and loads. DA Form 1248 (panel 2-1) is used to report the information obtained. This type of reconnaissance is called _______ roads.

(ground-water) (2-15)

FRAME 2-16.

Rock formations are also important considerations in location reconnaissance as possible natural foundations or as possible quarry sites for construction materials (fill, base course, and surface course). When rock formations are used as a foundation, drainage problems and possible failure in localities of cavernous limestone are possible. There are four considerations concerning rock formations which should be noted in location reconnaissance: (1) Suitability as natural foundations, (2) possible quarry sites, (3) _______ work:

(hasty) (2-27)	
FRAME 2-28.	
Consistent with	requirements, hasty location is governe
by the character of the soi	l and topography which will require the least construc
tion effort for	and grading.
-	•
	• ,
	\
	1
	•
	•
•	
	·
4	,
(map) (typical) (locations	s) (2-39)
FRAME 2-40.	,
The degree of accuracy	y with which the survey is con
	ne given situation. In the final analysis, however, its
	extent of the survey.
4	survey.
•	
•	. •
•	•

(road) (existing) (2-4)

FRAME 2-5.

A road is no better than its worst obstruction. Logical procedure for improving existing roads, therefore, is to reduce the most limiting bottlenecks first. Obstructions noted during road reconnaissance are reported in Section III of DA Form 1248. For example, the grid references for grades steeper than ______ percent are reported.

(3) ground-water (4) blasting (2-16)

FRAME. 2-17.

Water is necessary for construction work as well as for personnel. The quantity, quality, and accessibility of _______ sources should always be determined in a location reconnaissance.

Set 3. Deliberate Location Methods

(tactical) (drainage) (2-28) FRAME 2-29.

Deliberate location is the careful selection of the best route for a road. It is usually confined to rear areas and the construction of main supply roads.

location is based on an engineer study including evaluation of several possible routes in terms of design standards and location criteria.

(preliminary) (final) (2-40)

FRAME 2-41.

From the data secured in the preliminary survey, a final specific location must be selected for the new road. This entire operation is called _____



7 (2-5)

FRAME 2-6.

Se	ectio	n II	of DA	Form	1248	provides	for o	detailed	d informa	tion	on :	aline	ment,
draina	ge,	fouņ	dation,	and	road	surface.	The	back	(Section	IV)	of	the	form
provid	es a	deta	ailed _							_•			,

(water) (2-17)

FRAME 2-18.

Vegetation affecting clearing and grubbing work is noted during location reconnaissance. This is termed timber cruising. Also, the effects of clearing on camouflage and availability of timber for construction may be significant. Timber cruising is the reconnaissance activity that estimates the amount of ______ and _____ involved.



(deliberate) (2-29)

FRAME 2-30.

(final) (location) (2-41)

FRAME 2-42,

Final location is based on an evaluation (weighing) of the elements of alinement, grade, and earthwork involved in the proposed location. These factors would be ______ to find the most practical route for construction.



(mileage) (chart) (2-6)

FRAME 2-7.

The purpose of periodic road reconnaissance is to maintain complete data on the condition of roads currently in use. The information obtained is normally posted on a situation map. To insure that roads are NOT maintained longer than needed, maintenance requirements based on ______ road reconnaissance are coordinated with the principal users.

(clearing) (grubbing) (2-18)

FRAME 2-19.

Ease of future maintenance is a factor. In areas of rain or snow, locating the road on the sunny side of slopes and canyons minimizes the possibility of the road's becoming impassible for long periods and eases _____ work.

(control) (points) (2-30)
FRAME 2-31.

Impassible lakes or swamps are also classed as ______ control points. Deep organic soils in marshy areas should also be noted because roads built in such locations take extraordinary effort and are likely to fail. Once these features are located, the engineer may sketch or visualize the most direct remaining route between the essential terminals and intermediate points.

(weighed or evaluated) (2-42)

FRAME 2-43.

All tangents and curves involved in the horizontal positioning of the road are considerations of ______; the rates of changes (elevations) involved in the vertical positioning profile of the road are considerations of ______; and the extent of cuts and fills to be made are considerations of ______;

2 - 16

65

(periodic) (2-7)

FRAME 2-8.

In active military operations, new road construction is avoided whenever possible, and in all cases it is held to the necessary minimum. If determining the location of a new road is involved, the specific term is location reconnaissance. Only ofter the possibility of using an existing road has been eliminated, is the construction of a new road undertaken. When a new road is determined to be necessary, the first step is ______ reconnaissance.

(maintenance) (2-19)

FRAME 2-20.

At times, tactical and engineering considerations are in conflict with the best location based on the preceding criteria. In these cases, the location criteria must be subordinated. An overriding ______ consideration, for example, is that the road must be ready for use when the situation requires it. Improvements may be effected at a later date.

(primary) (intermediate) (2-31) FRAME 2-32.

Secondary control features are those which present the most likely places for the road and which avoid difficult construction. Saddles or gaps which permit crossings between ridges and river-crossing points are examples of ______ control features. Where a road can follow general contour directions, construction is usually easier. Such sections become tertiary control features.

(alinement) (grade) (earthwork) (2-43) FRAME 2-44.

Two methods are employed in final location — field location and paper location. Working out the location of the road on the ground, using the pre-liminary survey alinement and profile as a basis for development would/be

(location) (2-8)

FRAME 2-9.

Location reconnaissance has as its main objective that location of a new road that will hold up under anticipated traffic and provide optimum operating conditions with a judicious expenditure of engineer effort. Several location criteria are followed as closely as possible during (1) ______ reconnaissance. Sometimes one factor has to be weighed against another since few locations meet all (2) ______

(tactical) (2-20)

FRAME 2-21.

Convenient sites for development as bivouac areas and supply points may be important tactical requirements, as well as provision for artillery, and armor units to leave the road to fire emergency missions. The latter would also enable traffic using the road to take cover in the event of an air attack. These tactical needs may require disregard of certain favorable location

(secondary) (2-32)

FRAME 2-33.

The engineer study is NOT confined to single possibilities, but visualizes all alternate plans and the connecting of control features in various conceivable fashions. When certain control features must be ignored in selecting the final flocation, tertiary features are discarded before secondary and _______ features give way to ______

(field) (location) (2-44)

FRAME 2-45.

Planning the location on a topographic map; preparing suitable plan, profile, and cross section drawings; and then staking out the planned location on the ground according to the drawings would be

(1) location (2) criteria (2-9)

FRAME 2-10.

Locating portions of the new road along and over existing	roads, railroads,
or trails is always a primary goal. The use of	facilities
shortens construction time and, in many cases, provides better	roads than can
be built from the ground up in the limited	available during
combat operations.)

(criteria) (2-21)

FRAME 2-22.

In some cases, economy of engineer effort may dictate choosing a location with less desirable location ______. Where the anticipated life usage falls within a predictable dry season, the criteria for _____ may be disregarded.



(secondary) (primary) (2-33) FRAME 2-34.

For each road location visualized, the engineer considers the various location criteria—clearing, cuts and fills, drainage, alinement, and so forth. Most of the work to this point can be done from maps or aerial photographs, which then indicate where detailed _______ reconnaissance can be directed toward the most promising possibilities.

(paper) (location) (2-45)

FRAME 2-46.

Paper location permits adjustments aimed at securing better alinement and obtaining less severe grades, as well as simplifying drainage problems. It is easier to adjust the ______ and _____ on paper than to experiment on the ground.



(existing) (time) (2-10)

FRAME 2-11.

Topography (panel 2-2) is especially important to road location in mountainous terrain, where changing alinement and extensive grading (cut and fill) are usually necessary. Natural contour or stream lines are followed so far as practicable. When a road must cross a ridge between two valleys, ________is a criterion of particular importance.

(criteria) (drainage) (2-22)

FRAME 2-23.

Map reconnaissance and ground reconnaissance are two methods used for determining road location. Study of maps and aerial photographs can readily eliminate obviously undesirable routes and indicate one or more possible routes where ______ reconnaissance might be made, minimizing wasted effort. In the final analysis, ______ reconnaissance supplements ground reconnaissance, and one or both are employed with location reconnaissance.

(ground) (2-34)

FRAME 2-35.

Actual ground reconnaissance of the site (or sites) tentatively selected, concentrates on specific information requiring close scrutiny. For example, grades to be encountered are estimated, and timber cruising determines the clearing effort required by sampling 10 percent of the area. Tree diameters at breast height (DBH = 4.5 feet) are recorded along the clearance width of the proposed roadway. Timber cruising must be done by ________ reconnaissance. Sampling 10 percent of the area and applying the result to the entire area is usually sufficient coverage. In small areas a 100 percent cruise may be made.

(alinement) (grades) (2-46)

FRAMÉ 2-47.

If time permits, the paper location method of determining the final location of a road is preferred. The time spent in the preparation of a ______ is repaid in better alinement and is directly reflected in both the decreased engineer effort needed for construction and the increased traffic capacity of the finished road.

(topography) (2-11)

FRAME 2-12.

Curves lower traffic capacity and institute hazards, particularly at the bottom of hills and on steep grades. So op curves at the end of long straight sections of road (poor alinement) are also dangerous. Road is a particularly important criterion for road location in rugged terrain.

Turn back to bottom of page 2-3.

Set 2. Hasty Location Methods

(ground) (map) (2-23)

FRAME 2-24.

Turn back to top of page 2-4.



2 - 25

(ground) (2-35)

FRAME 2-36.

Soil gradations, stream conditions (width, depth, and velocity) at crossing sites, availability of construction materials, and approximate balance between cuts and fills are among other items recorded. Ground reconnaissance may uncover discrepancies in the _______ from which the site was originally selected. The effect of such errors on the selection must be considered.

Turn back to bottom of page 2-4.

(paper) (location) (2-47)

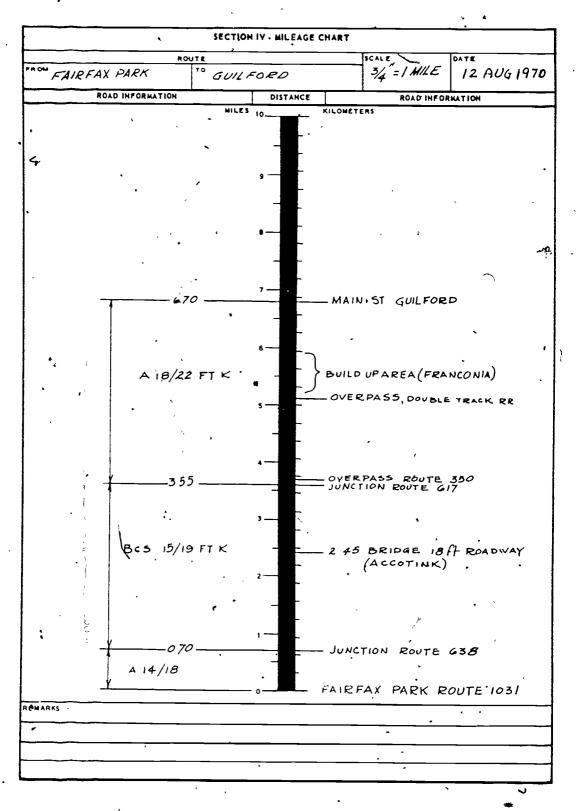
END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW

Panel 2-1. Example of a standard road reconnaissance report.

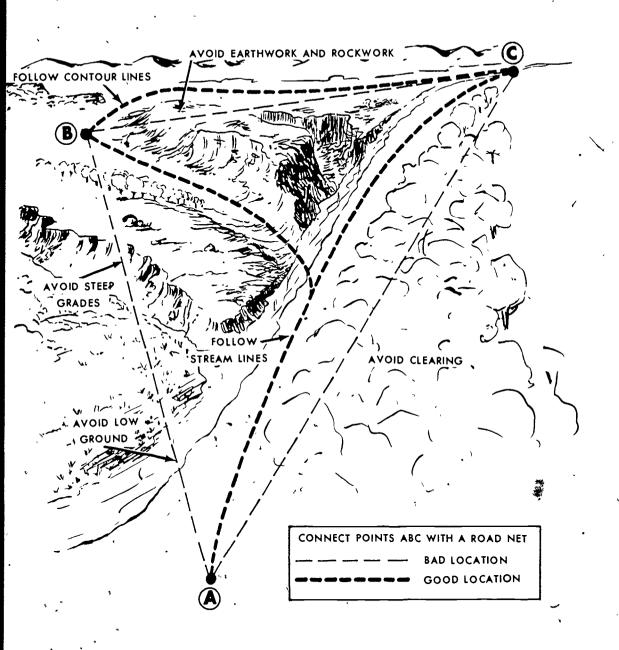
	ROAD RECONNAI		12 AUGUST. 1973			UST. 1973		
TOI (Hee	iquarters ordering reconnelseance)		FRO	Mt. (Name, grade and unit o	I ollicer or NC	() making reconnelssance)		
۔ کـ	2 /85th ECB	•	10	to It John J	Smit	L 185 th ECB.		
1.	a, COUNTRY	D SCALE		EET NUMBER OF MAPS		2 DATE/TIME GROUP (Of elgrature)		
MAPS	VIRGINIA, ALLANDALE	1: 25000		1 S.W. AMS V834 10 1630 R				
	SECT	IDN I - GENERAL						
3.	ROAD TRIO REFERENCE		RKING (Civitian or Military number of road) S. LENGTN OF ROAD (Miles or kitometers, epecify)					
	3024- 114100 313060-274 130			FAY 644 G 7 MILES R DURING RECONNAISSANCE Finclude less reinfell, II known)				
	OF ROADWAY (Feet or meters, specily)	8. WEATHER	OURIN	IG RECONNAISSANCE (Inc	lude leet reint	ell, if known)		
7.	RECONNAISSANCE HOT			, 95°F, LAST	RAIN			
DATE	T 19600800 - 1200	· A80U7	- 15	JUN 1960				
SECT	ON 11 - DETAIL ED ROAD INFURMAT	ION (Whèn circums a side of this form	tance , Sten	s permit more detailed it daid symbols will be use	nformation wi	Il be shown in an 📆		
b	ALINEMENT (Check one DNLY)		10.	, DRAINAGE (C		.Υ)		
· · · · · ·	LAT GRADIENTS AND EASY CURVES		ν	(1) ADEQUATE DITCHES, CULVERTS IN GOOD C		ВЕЯ WITH АФЕQUATE		
	TEEP GRADIENTS (bacése of 7 in 100) HARP CURVES (Redide Jace than 100 ft ()	Um))		121 INADEQUATE DITCHE ITS CULVERTS OR DIT	S, CROWN/CA	MBER OF CULVERTS, LOCKED OF OTHER-		
	TEEP GRADIENTS AND SHARP CURYES	FOUNDATION		WISE IN POOR CONDIT	TON			
11.	TABILIZEO COMPACT MATERIAL OF GO			12) UNSTABLE, LOOSE OF	EASILY DIS	PLAC EO		
1	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	لنيا	MATERIAL				
12.		THE SURFACE IS		tiete (teme 12e and b)				
	REE OF POTHOLES, BUMPS, OR RUTS L EQUEE CONVOY SPEED			12) BUMPY, RUTTEO OR I		O AN EXTENT LIKELY		
p. 1		THE OF SURFACE	(Che	ck one ONLY)				
	ONCRETE '	· · _		(8) WATERBOUND MACAO	AM			
	STUMINOUS (Specify type where known)			(7) GRAVEL		;		
V 3	EE MILEAGE CHART	. ,		(9) NATURAL OR STABIL CINDERS, DISINTEGR	ATED GRANIT	ANO CLAY, SHELL, TE, OR OTHER		
-	RICK (Pava)			SELECTED MATERIAL	<u> </u>			
	HUSHED ROCK OR CORAL	٠	INDIOTHER (Describs)					
SECTION IN THE SECTIO	ON III - OBSTRUCTIONS (Liet in the column metion of any factor cannot be excertained, etheed obstructione, less than 14 feet or 4 ductions in road widths which limit the tref cessive gradients (Above 7 in 100) type less than 100 feet (10 meters) in radius	Ineert "NOT KNOW! 25 meters, such as to fic capacity, such as	V'') unnete	. bridges, overhead wires #	nd overhenging	bulldings.		
SERIAL NUMBER	PARTICULARS		،	GRID REFERENCE	- 1	REMARKS		
	STEEP CRADE - 8% UP	HILL GOING-	30.	5200 - 294250				
	EAST, 02 MILE LO	-NG	<u>L</u>					
2	SERIES OF SHARP CUR		305	500-29425010				
3	STEEP GRADE - 7% Don		1	8000-293850				
	COING EAST					•		
		•		/				
		•	,	. ,				
						•		
L	<u> </u>		4					



Panel 2-1. Continued.



Panel 2-2. Considerations of topography in road location.

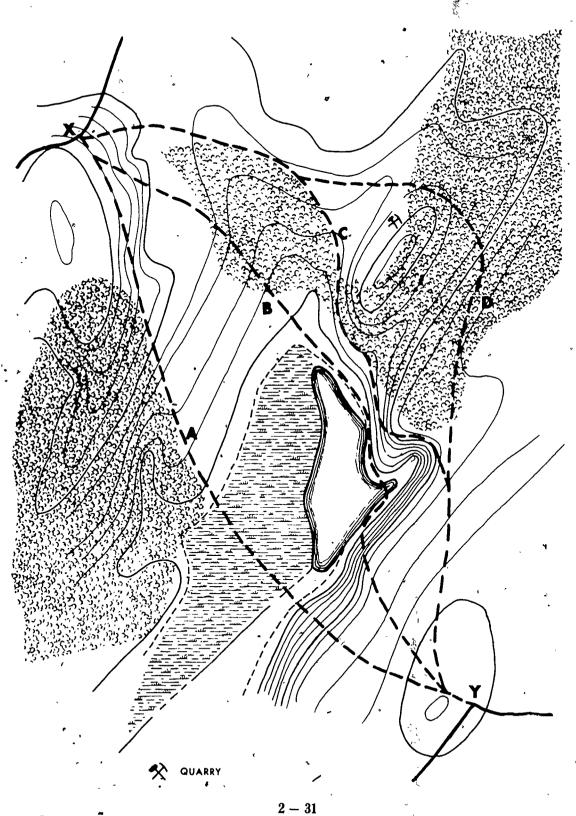




Panel 2-3. Preliminary Survey.

- 1. The purpose of a preliminary survey is to furnish data needed for final location studies and decisions. It includes but is not limited to the following:
- a. Establishment of a tentative centerline, staked out to the degree of accuracy required for the given situation.
- b. Prominent terrain features (such as marshes, swamps, rock outcrops, or dense woods) which influence centerline location are plotted.
- c. Elevations of key points which determine grades are plotted, and cross section elevations, sufficient in number for making earthwork estimates, are determined.
 - d. Field classification of the soils encountered.
- 2. Usually a map, showing the proposed centerline, the elevations of key points or contours, significant topography, and typical cross sections, is drawn to summarize the survey. Soil classification data is shown at typical locations on the map.
- 3. Sometimes the preliminary survey becomes an almost indistinguishable part of the final survey, but usually it is separate and distinct. The care with which the preliminary survey is accomplished, however, influences the extent of the final survey.

Panel 2-4. For use with exercise 25.





LESSON 2

SELF TEST

Note: The following exercises comprise a self test. The figures following each question refer to a frame or panel containing information related to the question. Write your answer in the space below the question. When you have finished answering all the questions for this lesson, compare your answers with those given for this lesson in the back of this booklet. Do not send in your solutions to these review exercises.

•	,		*
2. The road recommation does such	onnaissance ob a reconnaissa	tains information about existing nee aim primarily at producing	ng roads. Wh ng? (frame 2
		•	•
		•	•
		P	•
3. What items of ion II? (frame 2-6-	f information r and panel 2-1)	eported on DA Form 1248 pro	perly belong
3. What items of ion II? (frame 2-6-	f information r and panel 2-1)	•	perly belong
ion 11? (Irame 2-6-	f information r and panel 2-1)	•	perly belong
ion 11? (Irame 2-6-	f information r and panel 2-1)	•	perly belong
ion II: (Irame 2-6-	and panel 2-1)	•	3
ion ii: (irame 2-6-	and panel 2-1)	eported on DA Form 1248 pro	3

25 5

	frame 2-7)						•		
	:>	 				•	<u> </u>		
			<u>c</u>	. •		٩	0	€,	٥
	an's				•		. •	- .	•
						- 			_:
	•			,		•			
6.	Reconnaissance en eliminated fro								
	a new-road cons				type of	, econn	nșsance	ış tile i	,
• •	*	AD .	,		•	, ,	•		
•	3							<u> </u>	
					· 	,			
								٠.	
						·			
7 1	Cin locating a no	antion of a	nour ro	ad cu	onort vo	un ahai	no af on	o of tho	fol
owing:	In locating a po	n tion of a	new ro	au, su	phore yo	ur choic	e or one	e or the	101-
Ū	a. through a fla	at wooded a	area			•		, ,	
.**	b. on an abando			•		r ,	, '	•	٠.
	c. along the sid	٠.			, ,			٠.	
		·	4			t		٥	
•	d. over a ridge	between tw	o vane;	ys	<i>:</i>		•	(frame 2	10)
		*				•			<u>.</u>
						•			`
		,	.•	, 7	•	•			
			_						•
,	.	*	•					. مس	
8. well dra	The reconnaissa ined soils of high								
present	in appreciable ar	mounts? (fr	ame 2	-13)	,	•	u poo.		
	` ,	•	•	,		1			•
		9				, ,			
		•				·			
		•				,	*	•	,
	• 9	•					,		
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	· · ·		•	4			•	
9.		eer viewpo	/ int. ex	nlain v	∡ √hich of	the fol	lowing	sites wo	uld
9. probably	From an engine			plain v	which of	the fol	lowing	sites wo	uld
	From an engine	est d rainag	e.		which of	the fol	lowing	sites wa	uld
	From an engine	est drainag	e. a river		which of	the fol	lowing	sites wo	uld

			-	_			_1_
							,
•		~					
10. In maki	ing a loca e identified	ion reconi . Explain	naissance where a	it is ess geologist	ential that 's advise m	certain ight be	terrain helpful.
me 2-15).	4	•	•		•		•
			-		* ,.		'.'
•					•		-
					· · ·		
	` `		-		•		
11. Besides	possible u	ıse as a i	natural ro	ad found	ation, which	h consid	erations
uld be noted.	with regar	d to rock	formation	s. (frame	2.16)		
•					- k		_
· ·			•	.` *			· •
-			4	X .	. •		. \ <
		<u>.</u>		<u> </u>	P	_	•
•	•	•	•	-			
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,					د'مد	, }	
12. Why is			ng roads o	on the sun	ny side of s	lopes coi	nsidered
			ng roads o	on the sun	ny side of s	lopes coi	nsidered
			ng roads o	on the sun	ny side of s	lopes cor	nsidered
			ng roads o	on the sun	iny side of s	lopes coi	nsidered
			ng roads o	on the sun	ny side of s	lopes cor	nsidered
			ng roads o	on the sun	iny side of s	lopes con	nsidered
od practice? ()	frame 2-19				• • •	· · ·	
od practice? ()	frame 2-19	tions shou			be subordin	· · ·	
od practice? ()	frame 2-19	tions shou			• • •	· · ·	
od practice? ()	frame 2-19	tions shou			• • •	· · ·	
od practice? ()	frame 2-19	tions shou			• • •	· · ·	
od practice? () 13. Under tical considera	frame 2-19	tions shou			• • •	· · ·	

c. an abandoned railroad bed

٠ ,	•							
			•	<u>_</u>				_
	hat is the wo		elationsh •	nip betwe	een map rec	onnaissai	nce ai	nd grou
ι	1.	9		•	,		ŧ	
	: 1	•		•	· · · ·	_		•
• •	<u> </u>		•				-	
-			•				_	4
16 Th				, .	. ,	/ 1 .		
rgely base	ed selection of ed on a study (frame 2-25)	of map	and aer	road in rial photo	graphs. Wh	area (na nat usual	ly su	pplemei
<u> </u>								
	, _						•	•
	7			<u>*</u>			 -	
<u> </u>		. <u></u>			*			·
oute for a n	deliberate lenew road. W	ocation a hat consi	in engir	neer stud	ly is made be included	to deter	mine ngine	the -be
oute for a n	new road. W	ocation a	an engir	neer stud	ly is made be included	to deter	mine ngine	the -be
oute for a n	new road. W	ocation a	in engir	neer stud	ly is made be included	to deter	mine ngine	the -beer stud
oute for a n	new road. W	ocation a	an engir	neer stud	ly is made be included	to deter	mine ngine	the -be
oute for a rame 2.29)	new road. W	hat consi	ideration	ns should	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29)	rtain feature	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29)	new road. W	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29)	rtain feature	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29)	rtain feature	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29) 18. Ce	rtain feature	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
pute for a rame 2.29)	rtain feature	s along a	proposerts and	ed route	be included	in the e	ngine	er stud
18. Cene terminal	rtain feature	s along a re it staroints. (fr	proposerts and ame 2-3	ed route ends are clas	control road primary co	location pointrol po	For pints.	er stud
18. Cene terminal	rtain feature l points when y control points indication	s along a re it staroints. (fr	proposerts and ame 2-3	ed route ends are clas	control road primary co	location pointrol po	For pints.	examp Descri
18. Cene terminal	rtain feature l points when y control points indication	s along a re it staroints. (fr	proposerts and ame 2-3	ed route ends are clas	control road primary co	location pointrol po	For pints.	examp Descri
18. Cene terminal	rtain feature l points when y control points indication	s along a re it staroints. (fr	proposerts and came 2.3	ed route ends are clas	control road primary co	location pointrol po	For pints.	examp Descri

þ

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

COMPLOT	estures over	others. Wh	ien certaii	n contro	ol 'feature	s must l	favor c oe ignor	ed i
selecting	the final locat	юn, some с	ontrol feat	ures are	· discarde	d before	others.	Wha
is the ord	der of importa	nce of conti	rol feature	s with r	espect to	final loc	ation? (fram
2 33)			•	•				•
						·		
		,	,					
	•							
15.			¢/			,		
involved	When a road is usually estiman estimate?	nated by tin	nber craiși	area is ng. Wha	considerent is the n	ed, the coormal bas	learing sis, in pe	effor ercen
		t	•					
		•	<i>a</i>	· · · · · ·				
/	,							
<i>[.</i>	,				•			
• • •			`		•		•	•
•	Usually, a p				r Gamminh	data for	Tinal la	
1/4	39 and panel	•		•	•			
/ /	• • •		· · · ·		•		•	
///		. , &	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	• •	3	704	
/ /		. , &	· · ·	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		•	-	
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final	location of	the rou	te for the	road, ce	rtain ele	emen ust
23. are weig	In determining	ng the final	location of actical rou	the rou	te for the	e road, ce ements v	rtain ele	emen ust
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final	location of actical rou	the rou te. List	te for the	e road, ce ements v	rtain ele	emen ust
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final	location of actical rou	the route. List	te for the	e road, ce ements v	rtain ele	emen ust
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final	location of actical rou	the rou	te for the those el	road, ce ements v	rtain ele	emen ust
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final	location of actical rou	the route. List	te for the	e road, ce ements v	rtain ele	emer ust
23. are weig	In determining the determining	ng the final he most pr	actical rou	te. List	those er	ements v	when in	
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the dot of find	ng the final he most pri	ermining f	inal loca	tion for a	road are	e field lo	ocati
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the determining	hods of det	ermining f	inal locater locati	tion for a	road ard	e field lo	ocati
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the dot of find	hods of det	ermining f	inal locater locati	tion for a	road ard	e field lo	ocati
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the determining	hods of det	ermining f	inal locater locati	tion for a	road ard	e field lo	ocatio
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the determining	hods of det	ermining f	inal locater locati	tion for a	road ard	e field lo	ocatio
23. are weig evaluate	In determining the determining	hods of det	ermining f	inal locater locati	tion for a	road ard	e field lo	ocati

25. Panel 2.4 is a map indicating four possible routes for a new road connecting with existing roads at X and Y. Weighing the location criteria, which is the best route for final location of the road? Explain your choice. (frame 2-34 and panel 2-4)

LESSON/3

AIRFIELD RECONNAISSANCE AND SITE SELECTION

CREDIT HOURS

TEXT ASSIGNMENT

Attached Memorandum.

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this esson, you should, in the following subject areas, be able

- 1. Types and elements of airfield reconnaissance Describe the difference between airfield and road reconnaissance, explain the classifications of airfield reconnaissance (area, specific and hasty or deliberate), and tell of the importance of proper briefing and timely reports.
- 2. Steps in airfield reconnaissance Describe and explain the six steps involved in airfield reconnaissance (planning, briefing, preliminary study, air reconnaissance ground reconnaissance, and reporting).
- 3. Map reconnaissance and airfield siting template Discuss the need for preliminary studies and the procedures used in map reconnaissance, to evaluate potential sites and demonstrate the use of the siting template.
- 4. Air reconnaissance Describe the air reconnaissance team, the job of the two members, and the procedures followed in an air reconnaissance.
- 5. Ground reconnaissance Describe the sequence of a ground reconnaissance, jobs required major items to verify, rough surveys, and the general procedures following rough surveys (runwas location and staking of centerline).
- 6. Reconnaissance reports Explain the procedure used in making reports and be able to fill out reports of air reconnaissances, of undeveloped airfield sites, and captured enemy airfields.
- 7. Basic site requirements Describe the site selection process and the major requirements for airfield sites.
- 8. Application of site selection requirements Apply the various considerations required in site selection (availability and adequacy of supply routes, approach zones, mental hazards, meteorological conditions, hydrological conditions, topography, soil characteristics, ground defense, and water) to analyze the selection of a given airfield site.

CONTENTS

	·		Fra	ames -
Set	1.	Types and Elements of Airfield Reconnaissance	.3-1	to 3-9
	2.	Steps in Airfield Reconnaissance	-3-10	to 3-17
′ •	3.	Map Reconnaissance and Airfield Siting Template	.3-18	to 3-25
,	4.	Air Reconnaissance	3-26	to 3-32
)	5.	Ground Reconnaissance	_3-33	to 3-40
,	6.	Reconnaissance Reports	-3-41	to 3-45
	·7. ·	Basic Site Requirements	-3-46	to 3-51
•	8.	, Site Selection Criteria	_3-52	to 3-62
Not		For the most part, except for area requirements (panel 1 reconnaissance for Army heliports is the same as that for a		

Set 1. Types and Elements of Airfield Reconnaissance.

FRAME 3-1

Airfield reconnaissance differs from road location reconnaissance in two major considerations. First an airfield project involves more manhours, more equipment hours, and more material than a road project. Secondly - air traffic, by its very nature, imposes more severe design criteria (see panel 1-4, lesson 1) than does vehicular traffic. In the interest of overall economy, reconnaissance requires an even greater degree of certainty that the site selected is the best site available than does ________location reconnaissance.

(air) (ground) (3-16)

FRAME 3-17.

The last step in airfield reconnaissance is that of (1) ______.

This is a continuing requirement and the importance of prompt, accurate, and complete reports cannot be overemphasized. Reconnaissance reports must be submitted to higher headquarters in accordance with the (2) _______ schedule, established during the briefing step.

Set 5. Ground Reconnaissance.

(passes) (questions) (3-32) FRAME 3-33.

A previously discussed, airfield ground reconnaissance is preceded by two other types of reconnaissance. These are ______ and _____ reconnaissance. It was seen that these two types of reconnaissance discover or reveal those specific sites that merit _____ reconnaissance.

(possibility or potential) (expansion) (3-48)

FRAME 3-49.

In general, the factors to be considered in site selection for an Army airfield are less demanding than those required for high-performance aircraft of the Air Force. Army aircraft are light in weight, have a very low tire pressure, and require very short ground take off and landing runs. Therefore, Army airfields can be constructed with shorter and narrower _______. Less grading is necessary and steeper slopes may be used for Army airfields. (See panel 1-4, lesson 1.)

(airfield) (road) (3-1) FRAME 3-2. It was seen that roads had to be both feasible engineering-wise and adequate to accommodate the vehicular traffic to which they would be subjected. So must airfields be both feasible (1) suitable for the air traffic which will use them. The difference is one of (2) _: air traffic imposes more severe (3) _ than does vehicular traffic. Map Reconnaissance and Airfield Siting Template. (1) reporting (2) time-of-report (3-17) FRAME 3-18. As a part of its (1) _ _ (frame 3-12); the reconnaissance party conducts a map reconnaissance of the area or site involved. When the land or sea front is advancing rapidly (2)

__ is also advantageous in selecting tentative airfield sites

within enemy territory. These sites may be either undeveloped potential sites or

operating enemy installations.

(map) (air) (ground) (3-33) FRAME 3-34.

As in air reconnaissance (frame 3-29), enroute to the site to be investigated, the reconnaissance party should note and properly record ______ materials and the position of potential water points.

(runways) (3-49)

FRAME 3-50.

For efficient operation, an Army airfield should be located near the unit it supports. Generally, the closer the unit air installation is to its unit command. post, the more (1) _______ the unit commander can use his aviation section to assist the (2) ______ mission. Therefore, an Army airfield must be located (3) ______ the unit it supports.

(1) engineering-wise (2) degree (3) design criteria (3-2) FRAME 3-3.

Airfield reconnaissance may be classified as either area reconnaissance or specific reconnaissance. The first of these classes it is to a search conducted over a wide _______ to find a suitable airfield site. The second refers to an investigation of a ______ site, such as a captured enemy, airfield, or a particular undeveloped but potential airfield location.

(1) preliminary study (2) map reconnaissance (3-18)

FRAME 3-19.

For best results, map reconnaissance must be conducted in an orderly fashion (panel 3-1). The first step in map reconnaissance is to select the ______ of the area in which the new airfield is to be located.

3 - 7

(access) (construction) (3-34) FRAME 3-35. When a definite site is involved, a more detailed observation of access routes _____ capacities and (2) should be made: For example, (1) ____ clearances must be checked; the capacity and suitability of railheads and sidings for use in connection with the construction must be investigated; and a detailed report of the (3) _____ and (4) _ of construction materials must be prepared. (1) efficiently (2) unit (3) near (3-50) FRAME 3-51. All existing facilities within the allowable area of site selection such as roads,

All existing facilities within the allowable area of site selection such as roads, abandoned airfields, parking areas, buildings, and so on, should be investigated. The use of long straight stretches of existing roads as a "center core" for an airstrip should be considered, especially where existing roads occupy the only favorable site within an area. An important basic requirement in airfield _______ is the investigation of all _______ facilities.

(area) /(specific) (3-3)
FRAME 3-4.

With respect to comprehensiveness, the reconnaissance conducted in connection with an airfield location may be described as either hasty or deliberate. These terms have meanings here similar to their meanings with a road location reconnaissance (frames 2-24 and 2-29, lesson 2). A site selection based largely on a study of maps and aerial photographs would be called a location. The careful selection of a site based on a comprehensive and complete reconnaissance would be called location.

(best) (topographic) (map) (3-19)

FRAMÉ '3-20, 🚄

Panel 3-1 pertains to frames 3-20 through 3-23. Existing airfields are marked with a ______ -mile circle; high-tension electric lines are marked with a _____ -mile wide strip. These areas should be ______.

(1) bridge (2) overhead (3) quantity (4) quality (3-35) FRAME 3-36.

The runway is obviously the most important part of the airfield. Therefore, when the site is reached, the most likely possibilities for a ______ are first investigated. If the terrain is sufficiently open to permit good observation, these places may be quickly determined.

Set 8 Selection Criteria.

(site selection) (existing) (3-51)

FRAME 3-52.

Except for forward or support Army flight strips, airfields require concentrated materials and equipment; usually tactical situations demand construction within 72 hours. Therefore, one aim of site selection must be that of insuring that adequate supply channels (access routes) by land, water, or air are available. The more channels (1) _______ to the site, the simpler the supply problem. The distance to the nearest railhead should be checked as should the (2) ______ of the surrounding road net.

(hasty) (deliberate) (3-4)

FRAME 3-5.

For most efficient operation, the overall reconnaissance plan must be properly coordinated with all the various headquarters involved. The responsibility, therefore, for the reconnaissance effort cannot be that of the individual reconnaissance party alone, but must be through _______ of the various ______ interested.

(5) (2) (shaded) (3-20).

FRAME 3-21.

The next step is to identify and suitably (1) all other obstructions such as (2) towers. A-ratio of (3) should be used for determining the diameters of circles marking such obstructions.

(runway) (3-36) FRAME 3-37.

A rough survey of each selected runway possibility is carried out immediately. Lengths are paced or if possible are traversed by vehicle, critical slopes are measured with a clinometer, and directions are determined with a magnetic compass. The type of soil is noted, and hasty observations of a few samples are made. A ________ of a runway possibility can be made in 15 minutes or so, if the terrain is reasonably clear and open.

(available) (adequacy) (3-52)

FRAME 3-53.

Freedom from interfering obstructions, particularly in the approach zones, is another criterion of site selection. An airfield site free of ______ around the whole field is preferable, but an approach zone with no obstructions at each end of the flightsthip (panel 1-3, lesson 1) meets minimum requirements. Obstructions such as towers, pole lines, and stacks can often be removed; trees obstructing the approach zones and safety clearance zones must be removed.

(coordination) (headquarters) (3-5) FRAME 3-6.

Reconnaissance missions must be based primarily on user requirements, which, in turn, are often governed by the tactical air support requirements of ground forces. The various headquarters must maintain close liaison with the Air Force and with each other. Each must know what reconnaissance the other is doing or has a need for. A lack of proper ______ results in a wasteful duplication of effort on some areas or sites, while needed ______ on other areas or sites goes undone or is inadequately covered.

(1)	shade	(2)	radio	(3)	50:1	(3-21)

FRAME 3-22.

After the (1) ______ airfields and (2) _____ have been appropriately marked, the study for the selection of potential new airfield sites is (3) _____ to the (4) _____ portions of the map.

(rough) (survey) (3-37) . *FRAME 3-38. .

(obstructions) (3-53)

FRAME 3-54.

Besides manmade and natural obstructions, there may be situations and layouts which might present a mental hazard to the pilot. An airfield on a plateau, with steep sides falling away immediately beyond the overruns may have perfect approaches, for example, but pilots will always land well down the runways. A canel, ditch, or pole line at the end of a runway has the same effect. Such situations would be said to present a ________. The result of these reactions is equivalent to a shortened runway.

(liaison or coordination) (reconnaissance) (3-6) FRAME 3-7.

(1)	existing (2)	obstructions	(3) confined	(4)	unshaded	(3-22)
FR.	AME 3-23.	₹				٠

The desirable	features t	to look for	in selecting	potential ne	ew sites are	(1)
	areas	with good	natural (2)		un-
obstructed air (3)		<u> </u>	and proxim	ity to $(\frac{4}{2})$	- 	
routes.		~ *				•

(runway) (rough) (survey) (3-38)
FRAME 3-39

The best runway location is selected by considering the rough survey investigations together with such other criteria as prevailing wind direction, approach zones, glide angles, and the clearing, grubbing and earthwork involved. The clearing and grubbing effort is estimated by _______, the same as for roads (frame 2-18, lesson 2).

(mental) (hazard) (3-54)

FRAME 3-55.

Meteorlogical conditions must be considered in site selection. Wind, rainfall, fog, snow and frost are all meteorlogical conditions. The Air Force All Weather Service (AWS) maintains meteorlogical information for all populated areas of the world. Such data can also be found on both military and civilian maps, especially those prepared by marine and aeronautical agencies. The engineer must collect and evaluate all _______ information as a criterion of site selection.

(geologist) (3-7)

FRAME 3-8.

. No reconnaissance party, however well qualified it may be, can sa	atisfactorily
perform a mission unless it is fully informed (briefed) as to 'just.what t	hat mission
is. The party must know - the type of airfield site for which it is rece	onnoitering,
whether any site has been tentatively selected, or if some information	has already
been determined from preliminary study. Proper	is essential
to the conduct of airfield reconnaissance.	1

(1) flat (2) drainage (3) approaches (4) access (3-23),

FRAME 3-24.

A siting template is used to determine if the approach zones meet the
glide angle requirements. This can
be drawn on acetate to meet the glide angle specified, and the scale of the map
employed. The template, when placed on the map, will readily show any land
forms and matural or manmade obstacles which are in the
Panel, 3-2 is an example of such a siting template.

(timber) (cruising) (3-39)

FRAME 3-40.

Once the selection of	of a site is made, the centerline of ru	nway is staked out
and referenced to promi	nent features. This expedites the loca	tion of the selected
(1)	_ later by surveyors of the constru	ction unit. Ground
profiles are run at the (2	2) and at each s	houlderline. Levels
(elevations) are taken	at each 500-foot interval, and at an	ny breaks or slope
changes. In flat countr	ry, this (3) m	ay be increased to
1,000 feet.	,	•

(meteorological) (3-55)

FRAME 3-56.

If meteorlogical information is not available for a particular site, observations of the nearest point should be adjusted to changes that will result locally from the topography or other influencing factors. Interviews with local inhabitants may help to confirm _______ data and, in some cases, may be the only source of such information. If practical, sites near prominent topographic features should be flight-tested by an experienced pilot to disclose the existence and effect of any local air eddies and currents that may be present.

(briefing) (3-8)

FRAME 3-9.

The submission of timely reports is an essential element of good airfield reconnaissance. Higher headquarters must receive the reconnaissance (1) ______ in time to permit necessary planning and preparation before engineer units are committed. A time-of-report schedule must be prescribed and rigidly adhered to. Reconnaissance is of no value if the information is (2) ______ in reaching headquarters.

(1) siting template (2) glide angle (3-24)

FRAME 3-25.

Referring to panel 3-2, any hill, within the approach zone at a distance of 10,000 feet from the end of the overrun and having an elevation of more than ______ feet would be inside a 50 to 1 glide angle. Such a runway would be ______ if the required glide angle is 50 to 1.

, Set 6. Reconnaissance Reports.

(1) runway (2) centerline (3) interval (3-40) FRAME 3-41.

As stated previously, timely reports are an essential elemen	
reconnaissance. Use of standard formats is desirable and facilitates	
evaluation of two or more sites, particularly when the sites have	been recon-
noitered by different parties. Using the same	for all sites,
results in a better between sites.	*

(meteorological) (3-56)

i ?.

FRAME 3-57.

The hydrological considerations to be investigated include the height of the ground-water table and its seasonal variations, the flood characteristics of streams bordering the site, and tidal variations at coastal stations. This is most important; drastic changes may take place between wet and dry seasons. Unless care is taken, evaluation of ______ considerations made during the _____ season may be misleading.



Set 2. Steps in Airfield Reconnaissance.

(1) report (2) late (3-9)

FRAME 3-10.

There are six steps in airfield reconnaissance: planning, brie	fing, preliminary
study, air reconnaissance, ground reconnaissance, and reporting.	The formulation
of a reconnaissance mission is concerned with the (1)	step.
The planning step involves (2) of the recon	
by appropriate headquarters, prediction of user requirements, an	nd assignment of
a definite reconnaissance (3)	,

Set 4. Air Reconnaissance.

200 (unsuitable) (3-25)

FRAME 3-26.

An air reconnaissance team usually consists of only two members — the pilot and the engineer observer. The obvious advantages of having the officer in charge of the ground reconnaissance party serve as _______ observer should be realized. Likewise, the _______ is very much a part of the air reconnaissance team, NOT merely a chauffeur.

(format) (comparison) (3-41)
FRAME 3-42.

Reconnaissance reports can be submitted in writing or by radio, but a (1) _____ report usually should be collowed up with a detailed written report. Referring to panel 3-4, the statement "the overall estimate of the site is excellent" would be transmitted as (2) ______

(hydrological) (dry) (3-57)

FRAME 3-58,

Topography is probably the most important criterion in site selection. A site with favorable _______ is one located on high ground, with sufficient slope for cross and longitudinal drainage, and a reasonably smooth surface requiring little earthmoving. Uphill takeoffs and downhill landings require longer runways.

(1) planning (2) coordination (3) mission (3-10) FRAME 3-11.

Telling the reconnaissance party exactly what area or site is to be reconnoited, what is already known about the area or site, and what specific information the party is expected to obtain is accomplished during the ______ step.

Pertinent details concerning the times and methods of reporting are also included in the _____ step.

(engineer) (pilot) (3-26)

FRAME 3-27.

The pilot considers such flying problems as approaches, mental hazards, and physical obstructions, as related to combat type planes which may use the proposed airfield. The value of a pilot who is familiar with ______ requirements, affect of mental _____ on landing and take off, and limitations imposed by physical _____ is apparent.

(i) radio (2) BRAVO ENCELLENT (3-42) FRAME 3-43.

Panel 3-5 is an example of a written air reconnaissance report. The given example indicates that the site is classified as _____ and the flying approaches are

(topography) (3-58)

FRAME 3-59.

(briefing) (briefing) (3-11)

FRAME 3-12

T	ie prelimir	ary study	represents	the initial	work	by the	reconnais	sance
(1)	<u> </u>	T	he party st	udies the in	format	ion obtai	ined durii	ng the
(2)	,		onducts a	map récon	naissan	ce of th	ie area o	r site
invalve	ed, and stu	dies air pho	tos. Also,	during the	. (3)	 		study,
soil be	undaries a	re delineate	ed, other p	reliminary	informa	tion is	assemble	l, and
the ac	tual (4)		ià.	plánned and	l prepai	red for	•	

(approach) (hazards) (obstructions) (3-27)

FRAME 3-28.

FRAME 3-14

Panel 3-6 is an example of a report on an undeveloped airfield site. This report indicates that the proposed site has (1)

drainage and does not require (2) ______ clearing. Suitable sketches (panel 3-7) should be attached to all written reconnaissance reports. Such (3)

enable the reader to visualize the site, more fully.

(base coarse) (characteristics) (3-59) FRAME 3-60.

Ground defense of the airfield is another criterion. Terrain favorable for defense provides observation, fields of fire (both ground and air), concealment, obstacles, and routes of communication. The practicality of (1) ______ against both (2) _____ and (3) _____ attack must be considered.

(1) party (2) briefing (3) preliminary (4) reconnaissance (3-12) FRAME 3-13.

Reconnoitering the area or site by observations made from the air (flying over) facilitates the reconnaissance mission. A general study of the topography, drainage, construction problems, camouflage possibilities, and location of access routes can all be visualized from ______ made by ______

(construction) (3-28)

FRAME 3-29.

Panel 3-3 pertains to frames 3-29 through 32. In planning airfield construction projects, access routes and sources of construction materials are important considerations. En route to the site or a general area, the engineer observer would note '(1) ______ pits or (2) ______ sites and rail or road (3) ______ routes. He would also note any obvious (4)._____ on maps that have been studied.

(1) good natural (2) extensive (3) sketches (3-44)

Panel 3-8 shows that reconnaissance of a captured enemy airfield require
more detailed information than that required for an undeveloped area. Fo
example, the report indicates that the field has a foo
surfaced main runway, but that the generator system
required to furnish electric utilities is

(1) ground defense (2) ground (3) air (3-60) FRAME 3-61.

As in road construction (frame 2-17, lesson 2), an adequate supply of water is essential for airfield construction work. Construction requirements for water will be a major consideration when the moisture content of the soil is far below the optimum for compaction. Water for personnel must also be provided, both during construction and subsequent airfield operations. The ______ and _____ and accessibility of ______ sources must always be determined.

∢.,

(observations) (air) (reconnaissance) (3-13) FRAME 3-14.

Usually, specific ground reconn	aissance procedure is planned by selecting
from (1), what	t areas need investigating and what questions
need answering. Air reconnaissance	will give valuable negative information by
eliminating unsuitable sites, but can	not be relied upon for (2)
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	reconneissance is required for this

(1) borrow (2) quarry (3) access (4) errors (3-29)

FRAME 3-30.

The engineer observer studies the topography, drainage patterns, general soil conditions, and camouflage possibilities. He estimates these factors from the point of view of the essential ________ The pilot estimates the _______ characteristics of the site.



Set 7. Basic Site Requirements.

(4700) (concrete) (damaged) (beyond) (repair) (3-45) FRAME 3-46.

As in road location, the selection of airfield sites is usually a compromise between engineering, operational, and tactical requirements. In order to meet time limitations dictated by the ______ requirement, _____ considerations sometimes outweigh ______ considerations, particularly in such matters as orienting the runway with respect to the prevailing wind direction.

(quantity) (quality) (water) (3-61) FRAME 3-62.

Also, as in road construction (frame 2-18, lesson 2), the effects of clearing on camouflage may be significant. Ground cover in areas adjacent to the flight-strip is desirable, since it affords natural concealment for parked aircraft, fuel and ammunition storage, and operational facilities. To aid in _______, standing trees and brush outside the flightstrip are not removed or touched unless necessary.

(1) air (2) positive (3) ground (3-14) FRAME 3-15.

The next step in airfield reconnaissance is the performance of ground reconnaissance. While air reconnaissance can effectively minimize the amount of ground reconnaissance which is necessary, it cannot replace this important step.

It is on the _______, that most stions are answered, or that most questions from the ______ are verified.

(engineer) (criteria) (flying) (3-30) FRAME 3-31.

In reconnoitering a tentatively selected site, at least (1) _______

passes are made at (2) _______ feet; the final circuit is flown at

(3) ______ feet. The length of the proposed runway is determined by multiplying the air speed by the average time of two passes flown in opposite directions about (4) ______ yards on each side of the centerline.

(tactical) (engineering) (operational) (3-46) FRAME 3-47.

The size of the site must afford suitable area for the required flightstrip and all allied features and facilities. Therefore the overall ______ of the airfield is most important.

(camouflage) (3-62)

END OF FRAMES
ANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW

(ground) (air) (3-15)

FRAME 3-16.

Often, ground and air reconnaissance are not as distinct as they would seem to be from this discussion. A continuing ______ reconnaissance may be intersperced with ______ reconnaissance.

Turn back to bottom of page 3-3.

(1) three (2) 300 (3) 200 (4) 50 (3-31)

FRAME 3-32.

In departing from the site, dispersal areas are reviewed, and access roads as well as sources of construction material are again checked. Additional ______ over the site are made if any further ______ arise as a result of this check.

Turn back to top of page 3-4.

(size) (3-47)

FRAME 3-48.

Also, consideration should be given to the possibility of expanding the proposed site. This is rarely a deciding factor in the choice of a tactical airfield location, but it is important and may sometimes govern any decision between otherwise acceptable locations. If a site possesses any _______ of the runway, it should be noticed and reported.

Turn back to bottom of page 3-4.



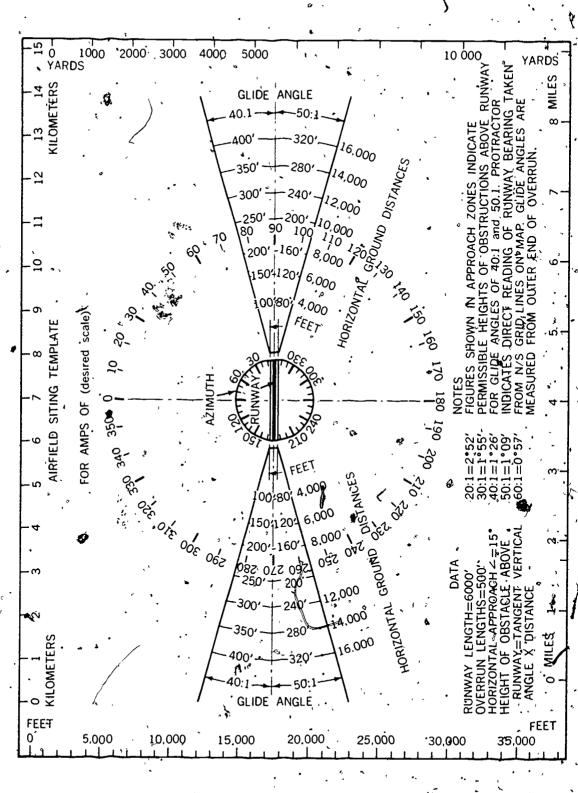
Panel 3-1 Procedure for Map Reconnaissance

- 1. Select the best available topographic map of the area in which the new airfield is to be located.
- 2. Draw a 5-mile circle (212-mile radius) around existing airfields; shade these circles.
- 3. Note all high-tension electric transmission lines: shade a 2-mile wide strip centered on such lines.
- 4. Locate and suitably shade all other obstructions such as radio towers, high water tanks, and so on. The diameters of circles marking such obstructions should be based on the specified glide angle.
- 5. Now confine the study for potential new airfield sites to the unshaded portions of the map. Look for sites of sufficient area, preferably flat with good natural drainage, unobstructed air approaches; and accessibility to route of communication.



3 - 35

Pannel 3-2. Sample Airfield Siting Template



Panel 3-3. Air Peconnaissance

1. EQUIPMENT

Two place, fixed wing aircraft, such as the 0-1, or two-place helicopters, such as the OH-13 or OH-23, are suitable for the majority of air reconnaissance missions. Reconnaissance of enemy occupied territory is best accomplished with combat type plan

2. PROCEDURE

The general procedure for an air reconnaissance is as follows:

- a. En route to a particular site or a general area, the engineer observer notes such items as open borrow pits, large stockpiles of construction materials or quarry sites, rail and road accesses to the site or area, and obvious errors on maps that have been studied.
- b. Within a designated area, specific tentative sites must be selected. The engineer observer studies topography, drainage patterns, general soil conditions, earthmoving problems, routes of communication, and camouflage possibilities. He bears in mind the engineer criteria for selecting an airfield site (set 8) and selects potential sites for closer investigation.
- c. Upon approaching a designated site for specific reconnaissance, or upon approaching a tentatively selected site during an area reconnaissance, the normal altitude for the first circuit is about 300 ft. Not more than orientation can be accomplished in this circuit, but sometimes a site selected tentatively during an area search can be eliminated during this pass or the next few passes.
 - d. Similar second and third passes flown at the same height. During these circuits, obstructions, main slopes, and similar general features are noted. The pilot begins to formulate his estimate of the flying (flight) characteristics of the site. Pinpoints for the ends of the runways are made on the map during these circuits, but additional trips should be flown across the site if necessary for such selection.
 - e. After the runway has been tentatively selected, an initial low pass over the proposed runway is made at about 50 yards to one side of



3 - 37

Panel 3-3. Air Reconnaissance (Continued)

the proposed centerline. A second low pass in the opposite direction is then flown on the other side of the centerline. Both of these flights should be made at a constant speed so that the runway length can be estimated by multiplying air speed (feet min or feet-sec) by average flight time (min or sec). A stop watch should be used to determine the time.

CAUTION. The length usually will be considerably overestimated when flying at low air speeds if a strong wind is blowing along the centerline. This effect can be minimized if distances obtained by two passes in opposite directions along the proposed centerline are averaged (if wind is constant).

- f. A final circuit is then flown at about 200 feet. During this trip, the ends and centerline are given a final check, and the pilot completes his appraisal of the field's flying suitability.
- g. In departing from the area, dispersal areas are reviewed, and access roads are again checked. Additional passes over the site are made if any further questions arise as a result of this last check.
- h. An area reconnaissance then proceeds by similar inspection of other possible sites. Complete notes must be kept to minimize the necessity for reviewing sites already checked, but a reinvestigation of the finally selected site and any alternate sites may sometimes be necessary or desirable.

Panel 3-4. Code for Transmitting Airfield Reconnaissance Reports by Radio

		\$ //	
	Signal	Meaning of Signal	Adjectives to Follow Signar
	ALFA	"The coordinates of the center of the runway,	(Follow with coordinates.)
	BRAVO	"Overall estimate of the site is"	"Excellent", "fair", "poor", "Possible", or
	CHARLIE	"Density of necessary clearing and grubbing	"''Heavy", "medium", or "light"
3	DELTA	"Amount of earthmoving necessary is"	"Great", "moderate", or "light"
- 39	ЕСНО	"Predominant type of soil is "	"Sandy gravel", "sand", "sandy silt", "sandy clay", "silt", "çlay", "Peat, muck, or swampland", or "rock outcrops".
	FOXTROT	"Moisture conditions of the surface soil are	"Wet", meaning flooded or that ground water "is close to the surface; "damp", meaning
	,		soil is wet enough that equipment operation might be difficult, or "dry", meaning that, as far as moisture is concerned, equipment
	GOLF	"Glide angle is"	can operate easily. "Unquestionable", "close", or "impossible"

125

Panel 3-5. Air Reconnaissance Report

AIR RECONNAISSANCE REPORT

,	DATE 29 SEPT 61 NO. 4
1.	TO CO 327 ENGR BN. 3. Map Sheet JOHANNASVILLE QUADRANGLE
2.	From CO. C 4. 10 MILES NORTH OF JOHANNASVILLE (Nearest main road center)
5.	(a) Coordinates of <u>FAST</u> end of runway N3 765, E 1 900
	(b) Length (feet) 5000 Fr. But MIGHT BE EXTENDED 2000 Fr (See ITEM 12)
6.	Classification of Site (overall):
	Excellent Good Fair Poor Reject*
7.	Natural Surface Drainage:
	Excellent Good Fair Poon
8.	Flying Approaches:
	Excellent Average Poor
9.	Clearing:
·	Light Moderate Excessive
10.	Aircraft Dispersal:
	Unlimited √ Adequate Inadequate
11.	Access Roads:
1	Good Adequate Inadequate
12.	Remarks: Extension Mentioned
	IN 5(b) ABONE MUST BE CHECKED AS
• • •	THERE MAY BE A SWAMP AREA IN The Downger
	CANNOT BE CERTAIN FROM
	AIR OBSERVATION.
	. 1400
_	(Time)
giv	Reject" classification is indicated, reason(s) for same will be under remarks.

Panel 3-6. Reconnaissance Report on Undeveloped Airfield Site

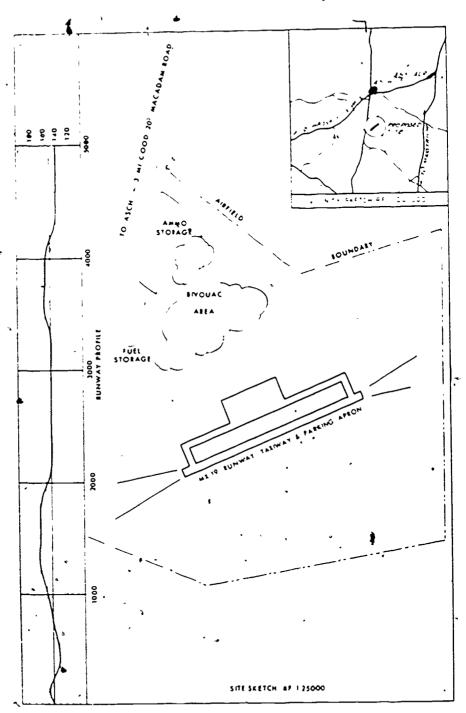
RECONNAISSANCE REPORT UNDEVELOPED AIRFIELD SITE

Commanding Officer 527 E	UER BN			
ом. <u>Со с</u>		CP	DATE A SE	p· 7/
fote The reconnaissance party ' Location of airfield gener b Type of aircraft that will occ Number of groups expected to	al or *pec.f c rupy the airfield	efolowing of streat in	,	
DESIGNATION Name CHELTS	NHAM AIRFIELD	DEPT OF PUBLIC	* == 5e*	
a Mapreference BAYS VILLA	LE OF MARYLAND A IMP	SONE WENTS STATE 1. 100	5 E +12" 77 ET	·
c Latitude & longitude 380 H4 d Nearby towns CHELTENHA	N LAT 76 40 WEST		_Map	्र १०५ ०१
ROADS US 301 AT CHELTE	Size distance and d	i rection from a te	IAD FROM BYE WEST TO	.CLAL ROAD WET
RAILROADS PENNSYLVANIA	Tape, condition, bridge	es forde, etc		,
GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF LA	rond ton distance from	tite is ding capacitical	**** * - 5 * はx * * お伝え じょしべしむみしょ	
GLIDE ANGLES NEARLY UNI	LIMITED IN MOST C	DIRECTIONS SEE ITE	n 7	2- 87M
FLIGHT OBSTRUCTIONS AND W	Direction, ele IENTAL HAZARDS ANTE	HNA, FARM AT NRS	S 5 M N DE 3 "E E.E.A"	
METEOROLOGICAL CONDITION	S WESTERW WINDS		<u>AL MC PRELOTATION HA</u>	5 24.V
HYDROLOGICAL CONDITIONS_	STREAMS ON EACH	rme, from precipiation. SIDE OF SITE RUN	S PISCATA WAY RIVER	
DRAINAGE SOOD NATURA	L DEAINAGE	ater, flood conditions indication, number of cullers	a (a* a: ::*)	
SOIL TYPES AND GEOLOGICA	L DATA CLAY AND G	PRAJEL		cre
CLEARING NO EXTENSIVE	LEAN NO FEW S	AV. + t. of combitations	BANDONED FRAME B 5 N	
PROPOSED LAYOUT VE-SW	J RUNWAY, USE EXI	STALL BLOCK 2500 F	- RULLIANS S. TABLE FOR	55 45 ALS F 82 63
REGOMMENDED SURFACING_	DSP OR SIMILAR P	TUNWAY AND G OPETER SYS		
CAMOUF LAGE LITTLE HATO	ral concealment a	RS, mechanica etab sat RFFOLDEO ADIGUATE D		
BIVOUAC AREAS USE EXIST		it, dispersion, deception WILL ACCOMMICOATE :	150 MEN	
WATER SUPPLY PUMPS, ELE	Location, a.ze, cov	er. previous y octubed		FIRE PROTECTION READIS AFFINED ACCOUNT
EXISTING FACILITIES SEWA	Source, 'ocation, q	EDS REPAIR POWER	PLANT SPERABLE ISELES	eators must be
MATERIALS AVAILABLE GR	Building + storage	DOWET WATER BEAR P	IT CHOSE PLE AT POWER	PLANT 1
. WORK ESTIMATE QUANTIT	qpm==1. borrow pite, g	rave banks, quarres m	reduces inter waleyou	SE SPACE NO LUAGE
a. Clearing <u>WEGUS! BUE</u> b Drainage OPEN DITCHE	(Acres, size if timber,	deresty)	Tr. CTUE AMS	
(Linear feet of o	pen ditching " ber of c	curverse, amount of pupe a	nd approximate diameter	
c Earth moving ABOUT HO	(Est: "ate	for R. A. T. A. H.S.	12 Tin-	1
d Surfacing LAY ABOUT 13	Countity for R. W.	T W. H S. recommended	*vpe	
	Majes, Cond	ME SERVICE NEED 5	PPPEMENT NA	
1 Buildings PRESENT BLO	KS / SUITABLE BUILD	D CONTROL TOWER sability for operations qu	attet ng	
TIME ESTIMATED FOR COMP	LETION 4 CO-DAYS	(Br-daye or Co-		
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	9 140c 4v.51 40v.c. com		MPROJEMENTS : LLAN P	EKSOUNIEL N. AEEA
CONTO BE THE LOS LIST AD TODOBENHIS .	construction nativ	ies appear friendig	MET OF PRIPOSED RUCH	AY JUDGE COUSTERS ON
ANNEXES SEE ATTACHE	D MAP AND OVERU	**		
	(Mape, photograp	pharmates, estimates,	1), tampies	
SIGNATURE 24 77 B	(In charge of reco	onnaissance party)		



3 – 41 4 ⊙∽

Panel 3-7. Sketch Attached as Annex to Airfield Reconnaissance Report



Example of sketch form to be attached as ammex to written reconnaissance .eport on as airfield site.



Panel 3-8. Reconnaissance Report on Captured Enemy Airfield

RECONNA SSANCE REPORT APTURED ENEMY AIRFIELD

:	
F	DESUNATION NAME AND ARES OF THE DESUNATION OF THE 29 SEPT 7/
	Server Action
	A Mad reference PRING PALTY IN BOUND WARPS SUALE STORE BORNAY - TSON FT
	141 At ard 1181 At 231 37 23 E 142 10100 tates 15 750 E 3 235
	A NEW TO BUILD BOND S IN MICE NE DE SIE PUBLIATION ABOUT HOCO
	FUNAS
	Fig. School For the S
	A CONTRACTOR A CONTRACTOR ASSESSMENT ASSESSM
	I THE LATE OF MALE TO THE THE PARTY OF MALE RIGHTS
	No this property of the state o
	THE PROPERTY BUILDS FAR BY LEECS MUST EFFRES ME ENGLISH ESCENDED BY GATTHON
	TATE OF ABOUT TALK OF EAT ISEABLE STOPEN, THE WESTER STUDIES THE NAME OF
	FEW LOW- LUZIBE
	- LAN SEN THE ENDANCHELT PRITECTED DELM STORAGE AREAS NO TAKE ON PIPE - NE
	Nomber and to sumps S. N. LAR. TO TEN E
	Ser cas characte LTRE L SEE. LEABLE DE REF- RABLE LOUD TOU
	S TO THE THE BOTTE BELL SET
	STUDIEST THE COOK - OF SOMETH AND
	STEP THE THE COENT OF ROSED AREA SOUTH THE LOCK BUT FLORE ALLES OF THE
	Contract State Sta
	The extention of the SELEE SYSTEM S. BUTT TANAGED COSOLUDINES RIVER BOLLER ALSO FALL SO FOR BE AT THE SELECTION OF EXTENT AND CONTRACT OF THE SELECTION OF THE
	AND AND LIKE S SURCE WE FUR FLAT OF STEW - MINRS AND PIPES ARED ATE FOR FIRE PROTECTION
	TO THE LAME BY SECTION OF STATE AND STATE AND THE PARTY OF THE PARTY O
	THE THE MORE APPROVATE SERVENCE STOREM DAMAGES BETOLD REPARE
	Cores as the Acoustic Power Attended Rate Raise Raise to Miles w
	THE SALE SALE BRANK NEED WAS FEE BOWE BOX TO BE CERT OF A CHECK OF THE TOTAL OF FROM THE OWNER OF THE PROPERTY
,	PERMANENT TROOP HOUSING ON OR AD, AGENT TO AJRE, ELD
	BINDUAG PREAS DEBUT PARK AREA ADTOLUM A RECEO SU TABLE FOR BUDGE AREA ABOUT 3 MODDED ACRES
,	Under Cround Shelter A. Allable None
,	DAMAGE CAUSED R BOUBING AND DEMOLITION NULE EXCEPT AS PRECIOUS ACTED
2	SCIL TYPE & GEOLOGICAL DATA SANCY
	HYDROLOGICAL CONDITION GORD COPASS R. ER ABOUT & M. E. JULE AT A LE FULL DE FLOWS TO PORT DING BOLD V. STEATHER RELIGIOUS COPASS OF THE PROPERTY OF COPASS OF THE PROPERTY OF
2	THE PRESIDENT OF A COLUMN PER VIEW OF EXTRE MELY WINH PRESIDENT ON ARMY TON PER VE
ı	CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS AND ELIPMENT OF ARION OF THE PIRAL OF TEMPERATURE OF SULVEN WE OUTSTANDING OF SEASON
	Grain said remail aspect in more place the cardade grain of the machinery borrow pits, more dumps, ARFIRD ADDITIONAL INFORMATION THEF OF Y LLAGE LIVES HEAR AIR FIELD MATIVES UNFRIENDLY CHIEF AND PROBABLE
	SABOTAGE BY NATIVES OF VILLAGE
	ANNEXES SEE ATTACHED SKETCH
	Maps, photographe exerches, overlass, edicamples
0	SIGNATURE of l Parent
	in charge of reconnaiseance party



LESSON 3

SELF TEST

Note: The following exercises comprise a self test. The figures following each question refer to a frame or panel containing information related to the question. Write your answer in the space below the question. When you have finished answering all the questions for this lesson, compare your answers with those given for this lesson in the back of this booklet. Do not send in your solutions to these review exercises.

1				
		·		
:				
	•			
2. The over rious headquart	rall reconnaissan ers involved. W	ce plan must be Thy is this impo	e properly coor rtant? (frame	dinated with all the 3-6)
	٠ .	•		
<u>.</u>		_		•
•				
5				
5				0.10)
	steps required	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ame 3-10)
	steps required:	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ime 3-10)
	steps required;	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ame 3-10)
	steps required -	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ime 3-10)
	steps required	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ame 3-10)
	steps required	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ime 3-10)
	steps required	in airfield recon	naissance. (fra	ame 3-10)
3. List the			1	
3. List the	the major phases		1	
3. List the	the major phases		1	ning what is done
3. List the	the major phases		1	
3. List the	the major phases		1	
3. List the	the major phases	s of a preliminar	1	
3. List the	the major phases		1	

5. What is the purpose of gr	ound reconnaissance?	
		6 3
		
6. The prompt submission of can this requirement best be control	reconnaissance reports led? (frames 3-9 and)	s is most essential. How 3-17)
•		
7. In map reconnaissance, whon the map to identify existing airf	at should be the size (in elds? (frame 3-20 land	n miles) of circles marked panel 3-1)
(`
8. The fourth step in map received as radio towers. What ratio, wo f circles for marking such obstruct	ith respect to height, o	determines the diameters
	•	-
		,
9. The airfield siting template form and natural or manmade obsta approaches. Using the example tempermissible height (in feet) of any obtaining of 40:1 at a distance of 6,000	cles within the glide ar plate (panel 3-2), what structions within the a	ngle of tentative runway would be the maximum pproach zone for a glide
,		• • • •
	-	

pposite directions proposed runwa the two passes s negligible.) (fr	s, 50 yards on the sis 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa	s, 50 yards on the sis 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa	s, 50 yards on the sis 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa	s, 50 yards on the sis 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa the two passes i	ay. If the a is 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa the two passes i	ay. If the a is 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa the two passes i	ay. If the a is 55 second
pposite directions proposed runwa the two passes i	ay. If the a is 55 second
proposed runwa the two passes i	ay. If the a is 55 second
\	
air and ground rules 3-29 and 3-34	econnaissar)
	·
n a wooded area, effort for the rem	, describe t noval of tre
֝֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜֜	es 3-29 and 3-34



130

د				
` `		,		
f				•
	a radio report concerni agle is excellent" be tra			
		-		
		,	•	
17. What cons	sideration controls the f	inal selection of air	field sites? (fram	ie 3-46
•	,			
·				
•	•		-	
	•	•	,	
Force bases. For e	rements for Army airfic xample, steeper slopes r num change in grade (in	nay be tolerated fo	r Army runways	; what
-	<u> </u>	•		
		<u> </u>	<u></u>	
	•			
•	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			4
•	,			
occupies the only fappropriate to take	naissance of a potential a avorable location for the e? (frame 3-51)	airfield site reveals to runway. What ac	that a long straightion would be th	nt roac e mos
<u> </u>				
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
) 	ı		

	<u> </u>
	•
\	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
,	
21. Certain situations and layouts such as cunway are said to present a mental hazard to the effective actions to such situations have on the effective continuous forms.	he pilot. What effect does the pilot
,	•
22 Matainelagical condition are un impor	tant criterion in final@site selection
22. Meteorological conditions are an import What agency of the Air Force maintains meteorograms of the world? (frame 3-55)	ological information for all populate
	·
•	
23. An ideal site is located on high ground ongrtudinal drainage, and a reasonably smooth Which criterion of site selection determines the equired? (frame 3-58)	i, with sufficient slope for cross an surface requiring little earthworle extent of drainage and earthwor
-	
24. Explain the importance of examining hation and soil characteristics. (frame 3-57 and 3-	hydrological conditions and consider 59)
\	

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

25. W (frame 3-59)		controls the thickness of t	he base course wh	en required?
	· • •	• ,		
		,		
				• ,



TO STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PA

LESSON 4

LAYOUT PROCEDURES, CONSTRUCTION STAKING AND ALINEMENT

ĆI	REDI	T HOURS		2	٠	, , ,	•. •	· .	æ
TE	XT	SSIGNI	MĒNT	. Attach	ع ed _, Men	norandu	m.		
M	ATE	RIALS RE	QUIRED	None.			٠,		١.
			LE	ESSON O	BJECT	IVES		, `	•
to:	Upo	on complet	ion of this les	sson, you sh	ould in th	ne followi	ng subject	s areas,	be-able
1.	Con hori	itrol surve izontal con	y - Discuss itrol.	the value o	f bench	marks in	determin	ing verti	cal and
2.	Use disc	e of constru cuss their	i ction stake s - placement, th	— Describe ne markings	the prima	ary functi eir meani	on of cons	truction	stakes;
3.	Hor tang	r <mark>izontal ali</mark> gents, poin	nement — Di it of intersect aking curves	scuss the co	mponent	ts. the se	ven princi	iples in l hord, and	ocating d hasty
4.	the tion	two types (PVI), po	nent — Discu of parabolic c int of vertica offsets and	curves (over il curvature	t and inv (PVC).	vert) the	noint of v	erticah ir	orcor.
	-{	'				-	, ,	-	•
•	٠,		- જે	CONT	ENTS	•			• ~
•	4	•	•					Fram	ie s
'Set	1.	Control S	Survey			 B	• ,	4-1 to	4-10
	2.	Use of C				,			
			onstruction S	Stakes				4-11 to	4-43
•	, 3.		onstruction S al Alinement	-			•	•	***
•	, 3. ^4.	Horizont			- 		•	4-44 to	4-72

Set 1. Control Survey

FRAME 4-1.

					6				
(1) L	(2)	15	+	00	(3)	\mathbf{F}	(4)	<u>2°</u>	(4-25)

FRAME 4-26.

The limits of the grading work must be clearly marked. Slope stakes are used to define the ______ of _____.

(principle) (1-50)

FRAME 4-51.

Keeping the number of tangents to a minimum will minimize the number of curves, provide long ______ stretches, and improve route capacity,

(horizontal) (4-75)

TRAME 4-76.

The two processes, however, are closely related. An excellent horizontal alinement may be entirely unacceptable because of ______ limitations.

Bench marks and (1)		control points a	are frequently
called hubs because of the short			
wooden stakes and are driven flus			
has a tack in it			
linear measurements.		, onder point to	. angalai ana
measurements.			
· ·			
·		,	
. -		•	•
	•		
	ن برسته	• *	
يستمسل والمرابي	٠,٠٠		
ر من المنظم br>المنظم المنظم المنظ		•	
	, •		•
	. "		
34	/		
(limits) (grading) (4-26)			•
FRAME 4-27.	•		
In road work,			

(straight) (4-51)

FRAME 4-52.

The number of tangents on any road project should be kept to a

(grade) (4-76)

FRAME 4-77.

The design process is necessarily a trial and error process until the design specifications of _____ and ____ alinements are met.

	*
(1) horizontal (2) control hub (4) FRAME 4-3.	4-2)
The elevations of established	d bench marks are recorded and used as (1) points. The tack serves to mark the
centerline or turning point for (2)	control.
	4
•	,
•	

(slope) (4-27)

FRAME 4-28.

____ stakes are set on lines perpendicular to the centerline (one on each side) at the points where the cut or fill slope intersects the ground surface and are tilted away from the centerline.

(minimum) (4-52)

FR 4	ME	4-53

Most roads constructed by the Army are supplements to an existing road net.

Therefore, there normally will be intersections, or junctions at one or both ends of military roads. The connecting _______ of new roads should approach at right angle junctions with existing roads.

(horizontal) (vertical) (4-77)

FRAME 4-78.

Gradelines must not exceed maximum grade specifications. If grade specifications are exceeded the facility would be useless, even though cuts and fills balance perfectly. Therefore, when setting gradelines never exceed

			tical control points (or (1) _
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.) and (2)	control points.
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.			
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.		•	
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.	•		
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.			
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.		•	
e) (4-28) IE 4-29.			
IE 4-29.	•		.
1E 4-29.			•
1E 4-29.			
1E 4-29.	•		
LE 4-29.			
	e) (4-28)		
	ME 4-29.		
		s are located at the interes	ation of the out on

(tangents) (4-53)			
FRAME 4-54.		-	• •
Location at	to the old	d road improves	s operating effi
iency and reduces traffic con	trol problems.		i
- 1		• • •	
		•	•
			•
•			٠
		•	
			,
		,	
	•		•
•			
	•		
b.		•	•
	. ,	•	
maximum) (grade) (specific	ations) (4-78)		
TRAME 4-79.	•	,	
Problems such as undesira	ible soil or water tal	ble level must al	so be conside re
solved) in setting the final gra	ade. These physical	problems must l	pe
n terms of economy of constr	ruction and a safe a	and usable facili	ty.
	• *		

ERIC A

(1) bench marks (2) horizontal (4-4)

FRAME 4-5.

Vertical control can be established by determining the actual ______ of the bench marks if this is convenient. However, this is not normally done in military construction.

(fill) (surface) (4-29)

FRAME 4-30.

The slope stakes are placed at certain intervals. (1) ______ stakes are set at 100-foot (2) ______ on tangents, 50-foot intervals on curves, and at sharp breaks in the ground profile.

(right angles) (4-54) FRAME 4-55. As we have seen, long tangents are desirable. The most common hindrance is some vertical obstacle such as a hill, with excesto long __ sive grades. (solved or considered) (4-79) FRAME 4-80. Grade limitations and limiting characteristics of the

of construction of a usable

must be solved in terms of

facility.

(alayatian) (4.5)	
(elevation) (4-5)	,
FRAME 4-6.	
In establishing vertical control, an easily foun	nd (1)
will usually be designated as having an assumed	(convenient) elevation such as
100', 1,000' and so forth. All other (2)	on the project are tied into
the datum of this established bench mark system	n.
·	
,	
	,
,	
· · ·	,
	•
\	•
	s

4	ι '		,
(1)	slope	(2)	intervals (4-30)

FRAME 4-31.

Slope stakes should be set at (1) ______-foot intervals in tangents, at (2) _______foot intervals in curves, and at (3) ______ in the ground profile.



4 - 13

(tangents) (4-55)

FRAME 4-56.

The engineer, when locating tangents, must consider the ability of the construction force to construct the facility within allowable grade limitations. Tangents should be selected which will avoid excessive ______ and thus keep earthwork to a minimum.

(terrain) (economy) (4-80)

FRAME 4-81.

Following placement of a series of gradelines, the road or airfield is defined vertically in a series of tangents between points of vertical intersection. Roints of vertical intersection are connected by means of

(1) bench	mark	(2)	elevations	(4-6)
×		, 674 347 11	ILLEGAL IV	\~ <i>'</i>	1 16 3 (2 (10)11)	(x · U /

FRAME 4-7.

	Vertical control is gene	rally established	by selectin	ng a conven	ient bench	mark
as a		and referencing	all other	elevations	to it.	

(1) 100 (2) 50 (3) sharp breaks (4-31)

FRAME 4-32.

The front of a slope stake is the side facing the centerline. Therefore, the of the slope stake is visible from the centerline.

(grades) (4-56)

FRAME 4-57.

At the intersection of two tangents it is necessary to establish an easement or curve from one tangent to the other. To join such tangents two types of are commonly used the circular curve and the spiral curve.

(tangents) (4-81)

FRAME 4-82.

A transition providing a smooth easy movement from one ______to the next must be provided. This is done by utilizing a vertical curve.

(datum) (4-7)

FRAME 4-8.

Horizontal _____ points may be tied into a local grid system if one is readily available.

(front) (4-32)

FRAME 4-33.

The amount of cut or fill, at that location, needed to bring to finished grade at the edge of the shoulder is marked on the front of the stake. On a slope stake, $C4^{\circ}$ would appear on the ______.

(curves) (4-57)

FRAME 4-58.

For military roads and design speed, the circular curve (panel 4-5) is adequate and easier to design and construct. Therefore, in military construction _____ curves are normally used.

(tangent) (4-82)

FRAME 4-83.

The _____ used to provide his smooth movement from one tangent (grade) to the next is usually parabolic in form.



150

(control) (4-8) FRAME 4-9.				•	
Usually, well ma	arked (1)		a	re tied into	o the grid
work and all (2)		di	•		
		•		•	
•					
•	,	,			
			•		
		ν,			•
· 	. ,		, 1		
(front) (4-33)	·				-
FRAME 4-34. Also on the		of t	he slope sta	ke is writt	en the dista
from the centerline.	j				

(circular) (4-58)

FR.4ME 4-59.

angle subtended between the intersection of the radius points at 0 (see panel 4-5). The point where two tangents intersect is called the (1)	The point where two tangents intersect is called the point of intersection
4-5). The point where two tangents intersect is called the (1) of (abbreviated) and the exterior angle between	(PI) and the exterior angle is the angle of intersection (I). This is also the
of (abbreviated) and the exterior angle between	angle subtended between the intersection of the radius points at 0 (see panel
	4-5). The point where two tangents intersect is called the (1)
them is the (2) of (abbreviated).	of (abbreviated) and the exterior angle between
	them is the (2) of (abbreviated).

(vertical curve) (4-83)

FRAME 4-84.

In addition to the smooth transition provided by a _____ curve, another advantage is that its essential dimensions can be easily calculated by the surveying crew in the field.

(1) points (2) horizontal (4-9)

FRAME 4-10.

Location of control points is important to prevent damage to them. Both horizontal control points and bench marks should be placed well out of the construction zone to (1) _____ them against accidental (2) _____

(front) (4-34)

FRAME 4-35.

On the back of the slope stake, the station numbers and the slope ratio of the cut or fill are written. If a slope stake is located at the edge of a cut, the letter ______, would precede the amount of cut necessary from the slope stake to the edge of the road shoulder.

(1) point of intersection (PI) (2) angle of intersection (I) (4-59) FRAME 4-60.

The point where the curve begins or leaves the tangent is called the point of curvature (PC) and the point where the curve joins the tangent or where the curve ends is called the point of tangency (PT) (panel 4-5). The point where a curve begins is the (1) ______ of _____ (abbreviated ______, and the point where a curve ends is the (2) ______ of ______.

(parabolic) (4-84)

FRAME 4-85.

'Set 2. Use of Construction Stakes

(1) protect (2) damage or destruction (4-10)

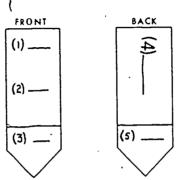
FRAME 4-11.

We will now consider the uses and functions of construction stakes. The primary function of ______ stakes is to indicate the alinement of a construction facility, to aid equipment operators, to control specifications, and to prevent excessive work.

C (4-35)

FRAME 4-36.

A stake placed and marked as the one shown in panel 4-2 (page 4-53) would mean—that it was a slope stake marking the point where a 1:1 cut slope intersects the natural ground surface 25.5 feet from the centerline, 7800 feet from the origin, and indicating a cut of 4.0 feet in relation to the edge of the shoulder. How would a slope stake where a 3-foot fill (1½:1 slope) is necessary, occurring 1500 feet from origin, and 20 feet/from the centerline be marked?



4 - 23



(1) point of curvature (PC) (2) point of tangency (PT) (4-60) FRAME 4-61.

The standard circular curve, usually used in military construction, is an arc of a circle. The radius of the circle, or the distance from the curve to the center of the circle is referred to as the radius (R) or radius of curvature (panel 4-5). The distance from the curve to the center of the circle of which it is a part is referred to as the ______ (abbreviated _______).

(upgrade) (4-85)

FRAME 4-86.

The two types of parabolic curves are: _____ and ____

(construction) (4-11)

***		**		•	_
FR	A M	HG .	4-	1	z.

The information necessary to constr	uct a given facility must be written on
properly placed (1)	at the site. This informa-
tion indicates the (2)	of the construction facility, aids
equipment operators, controls specification	ons, and helps to prevent

(1) F (2) 3° (3) $20^{\frac{3}{2}}$, (4) 15 + 00 (5) $1\frac{1}{2}$:1 (4-36)

FRAME 4-37.

As soon as grading work is started, centerline stakes will usually be destroyed by earthmoving equipment and many _ stakes will be removed.

(radius (R)) (4-61) FRAME 4-62. The distance from the PI to the PT or from the PI to the PC is known as the tangent distance (T). The distance from the PI to the mid-point of the curve is referred to as the external distance (E) (refer to panel 4-5). The (1) __ (abbreviated _____) is the distance from the PI to the PT or from the PI to the PC. The (2) (abbreviated _____) is the distance from the PI to the midpoint of the curve. (overt) (invert) (4-86) FRAME 4-87. The overt parabolic curve is ______ in form, the invert para-

bolic curve is ______ in form.

(1) construction stakes (2) alimement, excessive work (4-12) FRAME 4-13.

(slope) (4-37)

FRAME 4-38.

In order to eliminate resurveying portions of the road or airfield, offset stakes are placed beyond construction limits and are used to ______centerline and slope stakes.

(1) tangent dis	stance (T)	(2)	external	distance	(E)	(4-62)
FRAME 4-63.						•

The straight line distance from the PC to the PT is known as the long chord
C). The distance from the mid-point of the long chord to the midpoint of the
urve is referred to as the middle ordinate (M). The straight line distance from
he PC to the PT is the (abbreviated

(convex) (concave) (4-87)

FRAME 4-88.

Panel 4-7 illustrates a typical vertical curve installed between two intersecting ______ lines.

FRAME 4-14. Stakes on which the	inform	nation is written should b
nade from lumber approximat	ely 1" by 3" by 2" in size	e. In the absence of stakes
small trees blazed on both sid	es and cut to length ma	ay be used.
		*
,	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	٠′ ،
*	. ,	•
	•	•
••		
		,
· +	•	•
•	•	
(relocate) (4-38)	*	
FRAME 4-39.	4	
Located beyond construc	tion limits,	stakęs are set

a line at right angles to the centerline and in alinement with slope stakes.

	The	1	•.			(abbreviated	
is th	e distance	from the	e mid po	int of the	curve to th	e midpoint of	the long chor
· .	•	•	•		.•	·	1
	• ,	•		• • •	•	. '\'1	1
٠	ı	.•				•	
	٠,	1/2	`) 		, ,
	•	•			, 4 9	.\$	•
	•	· °•				*, ← •	
	٠		-	,		⟨ &⁄	•••

(grade) (4-88)

FRAME 4-89.

The intersection point of two tangent grade lines is referred to as the point of vertical intersection (PVI). Where two tangent grade lines meet is the

164

4 - 30

(construction)	(4-14)
FRAME 4-15.	

Construction stakes are usually placed by a surveying crew and they contain ______

(offset) (4-39)

FRAME 4-40.

Slope stakes are relocated first. The centerline stake is then readily relocated by measuring the horizontal distance indicated on the ______stake.



(middle ordinate (M)) (4-64) FRAME 4-65.

	The distance from the PC to the PT along the curve, measured as a series
of	100-foot chords is known as the length of curve (L). Therefore, L is the
	from PC to PT measured ir
	·

(PVI) (4-89)

FRAME 4-90.

The point of vertical curvature (PVC) and the point of vertical tangency (PVT) are the points where the curve leaves the grade line and joins the grade line respectively. The PVC is the point where the curve ______ the grade line.

(control) (specifi	cations) (4-15)		•	
FRAME	4-16.	,	•		
. Cen	terline or	alinement stakes	are placed on the		of
a road o	r airfield	to indicate its lo	ocation,	, and	direction.
\$		3	•	•	
. *		*			•
		•	•		

(relocated) (slope) (4-40)

FRAME 4-41.

Offset stakes contain all the information on the original slope stake plus the horizontal distance from the slope stake to the offset stake. This offset distance is on the stake and is circled to indicate that it is the ______ distance from the slope stake.

(1) length of curve (2) 100-foot chords (4-65) FRAME 4-66.

The angle subtended by one of the 100-foot chords is the degree of curvature (D) (see panel 4-6). The degree of curvature is the ____ subtended by one of the ____

(leaves), (4-90)

FRAME 4-91.

The PVT is the point where the curve _____ the grade line.

(centerline) (alinement) (4-16)

FRAME 4-17.

Centerline or alinement stakes are the first stakes to be placed and are located accurately because they are used as ______ points in locating other stakes.

(offset) (4-41)

FRAME 4-42.

(angle) (100-foot chords) (4-66) FRAME 4-67. The distance along a curve, measured as a series of 100-foot chords, is the (1) _______, (________). The angle subtended by one of these 100-foot chords is the (2) ______. (_______...). (joins) (4-91)FRAME 4-92. The point where two gradelines or tangents intersect is the (1) and the points where the curve leaves and joins the gradelines are the (2) ____ and the (3) _____ respectively.

<i>₽</i>	•	
(control or reference) (4-17)		
FRAME 4-18.		~
(1)	stakes are normally placed at 100-foot i	ntervals
except that on irregular terr	ain they may be placed (2)	
together for better control.		
•		•
		gur a ;
•	·	

(1) offset distance (2) (25°) (4-42) FRAME 4-43.

There are many other types of construction stakes such as shoulder stakes, reference stakes, and grade stakes, which may be used under special conditions (particularly airfield runways) requiring greater control of work. The engineer may use any special type ______ that he thinks necessary to adequately _____ a construction project.

(1) length of curve (L) (2) degree of curvature (D) (4-67) FRAME 4-68.

When hasty type roads and airfields are built in forward areas, high precision is not essential, a fairly good curve can be staked in by the eye and then adjusted as construction proceeds. Therefore, in this situation, horizontal curves are usually laid out

(1) PVI (2) PVC (3) PVT (4-92) FRAME 4-93.

Grades are expressed in percentages (rise of grade in feet/100 feet). The percentage of grade at the grade tangent nearest the point of origin is normally referred to as G_1 and the other grade tangent is referenced as G_2 (panel 4-7). G_1 is the tangent _____ the point of origin.

(1) centerline (2) closer (4-187)

FRAME 4-19.

The placement of centerline stakes on the centerline is our next concern. To easily read the information on them, centerline stakes are placed with the broad side of the stake ______ to the centerline.

Set 3: Horizontal Alinement

(stake) (control) (4-43)

FRAME 4-44.

As we have seen (sets 1 and 2), control is first established and then alinement is projected by means of construction stakes. The engineer must determine the best horizontal and vertical positioning of the facility. The horizontal and vertical positioning of the facility is called _______

(by eye) (4-68)

FRAME 4-69.

Another simple way of staking o	ut a curve in a forward a	rea would	be to
have the driver of a gradet or a truc	k make a gradual turn'an	d use the	wheel
tracks to	the curve	·•	,

(nearest) (4-93)

FRAME 4-94.

The offset distance from the PVI to the curve is the longest offset on the curve and is referred to as the maximum offset (MO). Offset distances from the tangents to the curve at various distances along the curve are known as offsets

O. The offset distance from the PVI to the curve is the

__ (abbreviated ________)

(perpendicular) (4-19) FRAME 4-20.	•		•			,
The side of the			stake whi			
is designated as the fre						
Land as applicable P	C for póint	of curva	iture or F	T for po	oi n t of ta	ingency.
					•	
	•					•
,						,
		4			` .	
		,	•			
	,	AA				
•		, •	(
, 4					ı	•
. •)	•					
		,		•		`
	. ′	C	*			
•		•				
-		- •		• ′	· ·	
(alinement) (4-44)	e- (-			•
FRAME 4-45.		,				
There are two typ	es of aliner	nent to be	consider	ed in loc	ating a r	oad or an
airfield,	alin	ement an	d vertical		_,	·············
r		•	;			
o*	•			1	~	
·		4. 7. 5		•;	444	

4.- 41

(stake out) (4-69)

FRAME 4-70.

(maximum) (offset) (MO) (4-94)

FRAME 4-95.

The length of a vertical curve (L) is the horizontal distance between the PVC and the PVT (panel 4-7). The actual distance along the curve is not considered. The PVI is located midway between the PVC and the ______.

(centerline) (4-20)

FRAME 4-21.

Also mark	ked on the (1) _		of the stake	is the distance
		onal part of a static		
which was ma	rked $18 + 26^{12}$ w	would be 1826.12 fee	et from the b	eginning of the
facility. A sta	ike marked 21 +	$25^{\circ\circ}$ would be (2)		feet
from the begin	nning.		~-	

(horizontal) (alinement) (4-45)

FRAME 4:46.

We will first discuss horizontal alinement. Horizontal alinement consists of a series of straight lines called tangents connected by horizontal curves. In looking at the horizontal alinement of a road on a map, we would see that it consisted of a series of ______ connected by _____



(compound) (curve) (4-70)

FRAME 4-71.

Both curves of a _____ may curve in the same direction or in opposite directions. In the latter case, they are known as reverse curves.

(PVT) (4-95) FRAME 4-96.

The curve length is the horizontal distance from PVC to

(1) front (2) 2125,08 (4-21) FRAME 4-22.

On the back of the centerline stake, the information on cut (C) or fill (F) required at each ______ is written.

(tangents) (curves) (4-46)

FRAME 4-47.

In the preparation of (1) ______ alinement, intersecting tangents are first laid out (panel 4-4) and are later connected by curves. Therefore, in the horizontal alinement of a road, we are first concerned with the straight lines or (2) ______

(compound) (curve) (4-71)

FRAMÉ 4-72.

(PVT) (4-96) FRAME 4-97.

The curve described in the preceding discussion was the standard vertical curve. Another type curve, the eccentric curve is used when one of the grade tangents $(G_1 \text{ or } G_2)$ is longer than the other and PVI is not in the center of the curve. The two types of vertical curves are standard and

<u> </u>	sed to indicat	е	,	_ and the	letter F t
indicate	 .	9			•
		,	٥		
	, ·• ·	./	, ,	••	•
14	•	¢ ′		,	•
	٠	•		•	
, 	.*				
	•	,	,		, .
.,	•		,		
4		· L.			•

(1) horizontal (2) tangents (4-47) FRAME 4-48.

Each tangent must be stationed or sufficient information obtained as to azimuth and distances so that horizontal ______ can be adjusted and necessary designs accomplished.

Set 4. Vertical Alinement

(reverse) (curves) (4-72)

FRAME 4-73.

We will now discuss the vertical alinement of roads and airfields. Vertical, alinement of roads and airfields is that portion of the design process that is concerned with the establishment of grades and the determination of the vertical connecting curves between these grades. The establishment of grades and vertical curves is

(eccentric) (4-97)

FRAME 4-98.

When one grade tangent is longer than the other the curve should be used.

(cut) (fill) (4-23)		•		
FRAME 4-24.				
The centerline symbol is	written		 •	
t	i, ž,	• •		
	- 4		٠, ,	٠
	• •	•		•
•		•	•	
	_	•		
		•	•	•
			en	,
	`	•		
· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		. 4 ',	• • •	الخي
	•	. '		
, ,	y .	•		· •
•			•	
•	v			_
2	^	•	<u></u> .	
			·	
(alinement) (4-48)		٠ . ٢ ,	•	•
FRAME 4-49.		3 4		
(1)	must be sta	tioned or in	formation of	tained about
them to enable (2)	,	of alinemer	it and neces	sary designs.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•		, ,	•
	•	•	* 8	· **
/			.	•
	•		A	•
*	.	• • •		
	A. 8	• 3	, he \	
			•	•
J . W		, ·,	٠.	. <u>.</u>
•	<i>ጉ</i> ን .			,

(vertical) (alinement) (4-73)

FRAME 4-74.

The grades must be kept within desirable criteria and specifications. The curves between the grades must provide gradual transfer from one ______to the next.

(eecentric) (4-98)

FRAME 4-99.

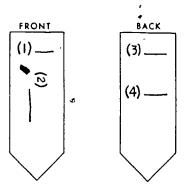
In hasty construction, it is often necessary to build vertical curves without calculations or staking. When this becomes necessary, the engineer must insure that the resulting curve provides a

between tangents (grades).

Ç (4-24)

FRAME 4-25.

A stake placed and marked as the one shown in panel 4-1 (page 4-53) would mean that it was a centerline stake 2600 feet from the origin and that a 4.0-foot cut was necessary at that point. How would a centerline stake 1500 feet from the origin where a 2.0-foot fill was necessary be marked?



Turn back to bottom of page 4-3.

(1) tangents (2) adjustment (4-49)

FRAME 4-50.

There are several principles to be observed when locating tangents. The first is that the number of tangents should be kept to a minimum.

Turn back to top of page 4.4.

(grade) (4-74) FRAME 4-75. The vertical alinement of a road or airfield is normally accomplished after almement has been completed. Turn back to bottom of page 4.4. (smooth) (easy) (transition) (4-99) FRAMÈ 4-100.

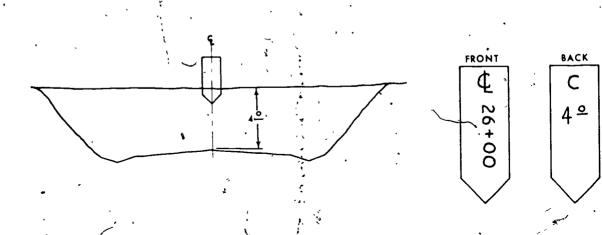
In hasty construction, curves must, therefore, meet minimum _____but they may be constructed without elaborate calculations and _____

52

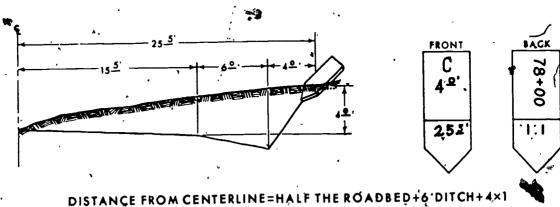
(specifications) (staking) (4-100)

END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW

Panel 4-1. Marking of Centerline Stake.

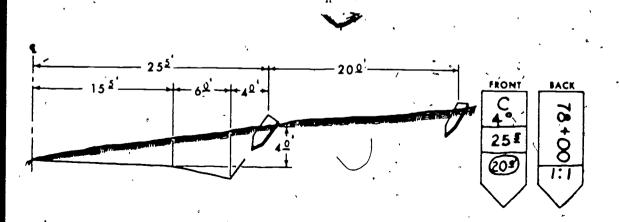


Panel 4-2. Marking of Slope Stake for Standard 2-Lane Road.

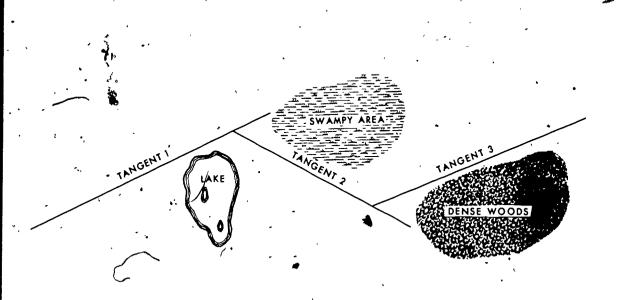


'=15.5+6+4=25.5'

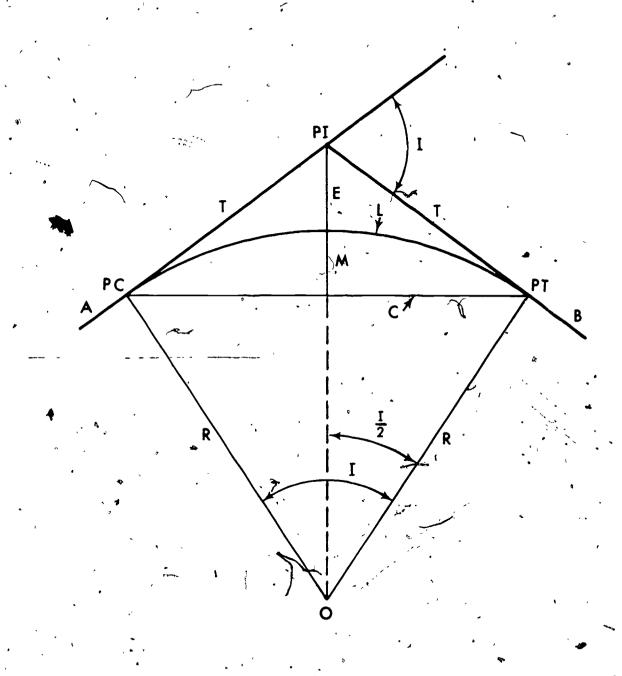
Panel 4-3. Marking of Offset Stake.



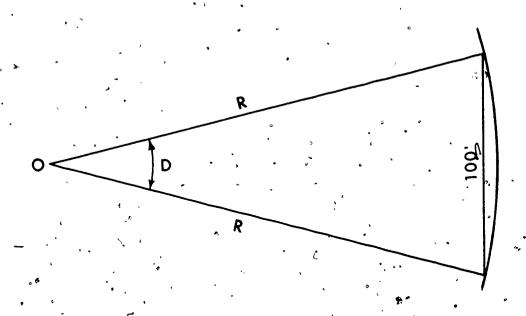
Panel 4-4. Horizontal Alinement—Tangent Layout.



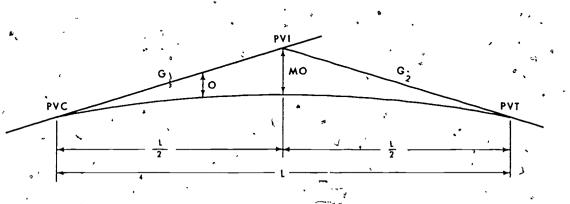
Panel 4-5. Simple Horizontal Curve—Circular.



Panel 4-6. Degree of Curvature—Chord Definition.



Panel 4-7. Parts of a Vertical Curve.

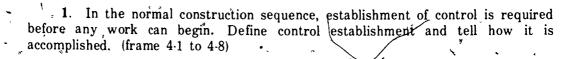


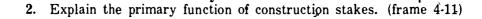
4 - 57

LESSON 4

SELF TEST

Note: The following exercises comprise a self test. The figures following each question refer to a frame or panel containing information related to the question. Write your answer in the space below the question. When you have finished answering all the questions for this lesson, compare your answers with those given for this lesson in the back of this booklet. Do not send in your solutions to these review exercises.

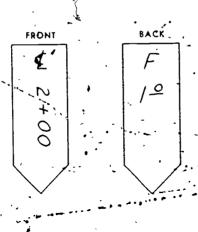




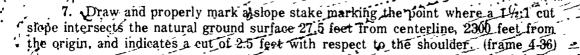
3. Give the purpose of the centerline or alinement stakes. (frame 4-16)

4. Describe the information which is contained on centerline stakes. (frames 4-20 to 4-22)

5. Describe in complete detail, all the information given on the construction stake below: (frame 4-25)



6. What is, the purpose of slope stakes? (frame 4-26)



8. Explain the purpose of offset stakes, (frames 4-38, 4-39, 4-41, 4-42)

, 9.	Define horizontal alinem	nent. (frame 4-46)	
4			

		<u></u>	·
10.	Give three-principles of	horizontal alinement. (fra	ame 4-50, 4-53, 4-56)
	•	•	,
		/) ·
11.	Define PI, angle of inte	rsection, PC, and PT. (fra	ame 4-59, 4-60)
***		٥	
			•
* 12. (-69)	Describe two methods of	f staking out a curve in a fo	rward area. (frames 4-6
		\$	
		?	
13.	When does a compound	curve become a reverse	curve? (frame 4-71)
	_		,
		,	,
		, ,	
14.	Define vertical alinemen	nt (frame 4-73)	•
	<u> </u>	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•
		·	
		1	
	, · , , , 		

16. Explain the difference between the two types of parabolic curves. (frame 4.85 to 4.87) 17. What do the following abbreviations stand for? (frames 4.89, 4.90, 4.50)	it preferred? (frame 4.84)	· · · · ·		•	3) Why is
4-85 to 4-87)			`		
4-85 to 4-87)					
17. What do the following abbreviations stand for? (frames 4-89, 4-90, 4-90, 4-90)		tween the two ty	ypes of parabo	lic curves	frames
17. What do the following abbreviations stand for? (frames 4-89, 4-90, 4-90, 4-90)	·				
17. What do the following abbreviations stand for? (frames 4-89, 4-90, 4-90, 4-90)		-		~.·	
	17. What do the following a	bbreviations sta	nd for? (fram	ies 4-89,	4-90, 4-91
(a) PVI	(a) PVI	•		·	•
(b) PVC	(b) PVC	/			*
(c) PVT	(c) PVT	•		•	•
*	•	k			
		•	,	,	۰
		ć	,		
	•			v	•
	,		1		

LESSON 5

EÁRTHWORK ESTIMATES AND MASS DIAGRAM

CREDIT HOURS		
1	•	
TEXT ASSIGNMEN	NTAttached 1	Memorandum

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you should, in each of the following subject areas, be able to:

- 1. Factors influencing earthwork estimates Discuss the purpose of earthwork computations and factors which influence them.
- 2. Hasty estimate method Compute volumes of earthwork using available volume tables.
- 3. Cross section method Calculate cross sectional areas by the most widely used method (cross section method) which includes two variations: (1) counting the squares and (2) triangle method.
- 4. Average end area method Calculate volumes by the formulas of the end area method, know the limitations of the formulas, and use earthwork tables to use as alternate means in volume computations.
- 5. Airfield earthwork volumes Use special airfield earthwork tables to calculate volumes by average-end-area method and explain the significance of the cut to fill factor.
- 6. Establishing runway gradeline by profile method Establish tentative gradelines early in construction to avoid unnecessary delays and allow heavy equipment to begin working.
- 7. Computing borrow pit volumes Compute borrow pit volumes by two different methods.
- 8. Mass diagram Describe the mass diagram and state its function, value, and use to include volume changes (shrinkage and swell) of soil.
- 9. Plotting the mass diagram Explain the actual development of the mass diagram; the significance of the various patterns formed by mass lines; and the computation of net yardage, total yardage, borrow, and waste from the mass diagram.
- 10. Selection of equipment by use of mass diagram Discuss the method by which the suitable equipment can be chosen for a certain length of haul and estimate requirements for time and personnel.



5 -

196

CONTENTS

	. 1		F	ram	es
Set`	1.	Factors Influencing Earthwork Estimates5	-1	to	5-5
•.	· 2.	Hasty Estimate Method5	-6	to	5-9 /
•	3.	Cross Section Method	-10	to	5-24
	4.	Average-End-Area Method5	-25	to	5-32
		Airfield Earthwork Volumes5			
		Establishing Runway Grade Line by Profile Method 2.5			
	7.	Computing Borrow Pit Volumes	-50	to	5-54
		Mass Diagram5-			
•	٠,	Plotting the Mass Diagram			
1		Selection of Equipment by Use of Mass Diagram 5-			

Set 1. Factors Influencing Eagthwork Estimates

FRAME 5-1.

	he calculations of earthwork volumes or quan-
tities in order to determine final gr	rades, to balance cut and fill, and to plan the
most economical haul of material.	The purposes of earthwork computations are
to furnish final grades, to balance	and
and to plan the most economical	of material.

(700) (41.30) (5-30)

FRAME 5-31.

The sum of the two figures (41.30) and (700) gives 741 (nearest whole number). This is the _____ in cubic yards between the stations.

15374

(excavation) (embankment) (5-60) FRAME 5-61.

The mass diagram is used to determine the most economical distribution of
materials. Since the amount of excess material between any two points can be
determined, a careful study of the mass diagram will show where it will be
expedient to waste material and borrow closer to the area to be filled. The mass
diagram would aid in determining when to material and
closer to the area to be filled.

(elevations) (convenient) (5-90)

FRAME 5-91.

Entrees from column 10 (ordinates) are plotted as ordinates and the centerline survey stations as abscissas in constructing the (cuts) (fils.) (hauls) (5-1) FRAME 5-2.

Materials to be imported and mixed with subgrade soils for subgrade stabilization are included in earthwork computations, but base course or paving materials to be placed above the subgrade are not included. Subgrade materials are included in the computations; base course materials are

(volume) (5-31)

FRAME 5-32.

For distances between stations (cross sections) other than 100 feet, multiply the result obtained by the distance and divide by 100. Should the sum of the end areas be greater than 1673.9, break up the sum into portions that will fit the table and add the results to get the total _______.

(waste) (borrow) (5-61) FRAME 5-62.

In making the decision to borrow, the work involved in opening and closing a borrow pit, and in wasting excess material, must be balanced against the decreased yardage output of the same equipment at longer hauls. Decreased yardage output in longer hauls must be balanced against the work of opening and closing a ______ and wasting ______

(mass) $(diagram)^{\circ}$ (5-91)

FRAME 5-92.

An ascending mass line in the diagram indicates an excess of excavation, and a descending mass line an excess of fill along the portion of the area for which the mass diagram is drawn. An ascending mass line indicates an (1)

of _______ of _______, a descending line an (2) _______
of _______

(not included) (5-2)

FRAME' 5-3.

When topsoil or unsuitable material is stripped from cut and fill areas and placed outside the slope stake limits, cut and fill quantities affected must be converted (compensated) for the loss of material. Stripping of undesirable material must be ______ for in cut and fill estimates.

Set 5. Airfield Earthwork Volumes

(volume) (5-32)

FRAME 5-33.

Because runways normally are much wider than roads, earthwork quantities are estimated from special tables of centerline cut and fill depths and corresponding volumes. These tables are prepared as shown in Panel 5-4. Estimates of runway earthwork require the preparation of (1) _______ ____ than roads.

5 - 7





(borrow pit) (excess), (material) (5,62) FRAME 5-63.

When there are both cut and fill vo	lumes between sta	ations, the	e mass (diagram
shows only the volume of earth necess	ary to complete t	he balanc	e. The	volume
of earth necessary to	the			
is shown in the mass disgram.		,		•

(1) excess excavation (2) excess fill (5-92) FRAME 5-93.

When the mass line forms summit humps, the haul will be from the lower to the higher station numbers, when the mass line forms sag humps, the haul will be from the higher to the lower station numbers. Summit humps in the mass line indicates that the haul will be from the (1) ______ to higher station numbers. Sag humps indicate the haul will be from the (2) _____ to the lower stations.

(compensated) (5-3)

FRAME 5-4.

The accuracy with which earthwork estimates are made is dependent upon the precision of field measurements during the preliminary survey and final location. Accuracy of field measurement determines the accuracy of

(1) special tables (2) wider (5-33)

FRAME 5-34.

A table for each site is diecessary as minor differences in transverse ground slopes and typical cross sections seriously affect the quantities of cut or fill in 100 feet of runway

(complete) (balance), (5-63)

FRAME 5-64.

Where cut and fill volumes balance	between two stations, the mass di	agram
may show	··	
necessary, Earthwork sheets should be	used with the mass diagram in det	ermin-
ing equipment requirements.	. }	

(1) lower (2) higher (5-93)

FRAME 5-94.

The balance line is a horizontal line between any two points on the mass line where excavation equals embankment. The maximum length of the balance line is predetermined on the basis of an efficient haul. Two points on the mass line between which excavation and embankment are equal are connected by a

(earthwork). (estimates) (5-4) FRAME 5-5. The precision of field measurements should be consistent with construction requirements. Sometimes the tactical situation dictates hasty estimates in which case (1) _ measurements would be a waste of effort. When time is wital, or the type of construction is of low order, (2) estimates of earthwork would suffice. (length) (5-34) FRAME 5-35. In runway construction, minor differences in _ __slopes and typical cross seriously affect quantities of cut and fill.

(no earth) (haul) (5-64) FRAME 5-65.

Panel 5-6 pertains to frames 5-65 through 5-74. Note that the tabulations for computing earthwork volumes and preparing the mass diagram are entered on such a computation sheet. Column 1 lists the _______ and _____ are listed in column 2.

(balance line) (5-94)

FRAME 5-95.

The length of a balance line is determined by the length of an efficient

, Set 2. Hasty Estimate Method

(precision) (hasty) (5-5)

FRAME 5-6

Earthwork can be estimated with only the centerline plotted and the grade established. The average depth of cut or height of fill between 100-foot stations is estimated and the volume of material is then read from a volume table (panel 5-1). Plotting of _____ and establishment of _____ enable the use of a volume table.

(transverse) (ground) (sections) (5-35)

FRAME 5-36.

Quantities for the table are calculated by obtaining cross section areas and determining ______ by the average-end-area method.



5 - 18

(stations) (end areas) (5-65) FRAME 5-66.

Cut and fill volumes, in cubic yards, are entered in column _____.

The quantity of excavation or embankment entered opposite each station is the volume between that station and the next succeeding station.

(haul) (5-95) FRAME 5-96.

The assumed efficient haul distance in panel 5-8 is 1,000 feet. BJ and KM are _____ whose length is equal to efficient haul.

(centerline) (grade) (5-6)

FRAME 5-7.

Required: Cubic yards per 100 feet of cut, 30 feet wide at the base, with 1½ to 1 side slopes and an average depth of 5 feet. Entering the table (Panel 5-1) at 5 feet in column 1 and continuing horizontally to column 8, the value for a 30-foot cut with 1 to 1 slopes is found to be _______ yards.

(volumes) (5-36)

FRAME 5-37.

Tables may be prepared for various _____ ground slopes and ____ cross sections by the unit surveying section during slack periods for use when needed.

3 (5-66)

FR	ΔM	10	5.	67
$\Gamma I V$	- 1VI	.F.	.n-ı	h/.

For example, the figure 537 in column 3 opposite station 28 + 100 means that there are _____ cubic yards of excavation between stations 28 + 00 and _____

(balance lines) (5-96)

FRAME 5-97.

Balance lines are drawn (1) ______ to the datum line so as to intersect the mass diagram at two points, called balance points. The excavation between B and J, D and F, F and H, and K and M is exactly equal to the embankment and all haul is within limits of (2) ______ haul.

648 (527)

$\mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}$	А	мю	5-8

Continuing horizontally, colur	nn 11 indicates	that	yards
must be added when the slopes a	re 1½ to 1.		
	•		5
·		•	_
•			·
		•	
		•	
*	,		
,	. s≯		2
	**	•	
		•	•
· · ·			
• •			
\sim	•		•
		•	•
1, .	7,		,
(average) (typical) (5-37)	•	•	
FRAME 5-3\$.			
The table includes the maxim	• • •		
ing the interval of cut or fill betw			
· ·	•	•	quantity of earth-
work is obtained directly from t	he appropriate		

(1) 537 (2) 29 + 00 (5-67) **FRAME** 5-68.

Note that both fill and cut are encountered at most stations in the table. This means that most sections on this particular project are side-hill sections. Station, 33 + 00 would be an ______

(1) parallel (2) efficient (5-97)

FRAME 5-98.

Between the two points where the balance line intersects the mass line, excavation _____ embankment.

46 (5-8)

FRAME 5-9.

The calculation is as follows: 648 + 46 = 694 yards of cut for every

feet of length. Volumes in table are "in-place" volumes.

(grade line) (table) (5-38) FRAME 5-39.

The intervals of cut and fill between the ground profile and the grade line are (1) from the sketch and the quantity of earthwork involved found by application of the table. Summation of the tabulated quantities gives the total (2) to be handled.

(exception) (5-68)

FRAME 5-69.

Stripping volume, in cubic yards, is entered in column 4. This normally represents one of two things: the volume of topsoil or similar material which is stripped and saved for later use, as in a cut section or the volume of unsuitable material which is to be stripped and wasted, as in an embankment section. Stripping volume may consist of either material to be ______ for later use or unsuitable material which is stripped and ______

(equals) (5-98)

FRAME 5-99.

In addition to the factors discussed above, the placing of balance lines is affected by the shape and number of the lobes of the mass diagram (refer to line DFH in panel 5-8). If this line is (1) ______ above its present position, it would result in a greater quantity of overhaul. It would extend beyond the points on the (2) _____.

Set 3. Cross Section Method

100 (5-9)

FRAME 5-10.

The cross section method of computing earthwork volumes is the most widely used method in both road and airfield construction. The method we are about to consider is called the _______ method.

(1) scaled (2) volume (5-39)

FRAME 5-40.

In Panel 5-4, the factor of cut to fill is based on 125 cubic yards of excavation required to make 100 cubic yards of fill, for fills 2 feet high and under (100/125 = 0.8). The factor of cut to fill is 125 cubic yards of fill for fills ______ feet high and under.

(saved) (wasted) (5-69) * FRAME 5-70.

In the project tabulated in panel 5-6, stripping begins at station _______because the work involved the extension of an existing field.

(1) placed (2) mass line (5-99) FRAME 5-100.

Placement of this (DFH) below its present position also would not be economical since a portion of the haul would then ______ the limit of efficient haul. Each mass diagram must be given careful study to determine the most efficient placement of every balance line.

(cross) (section) (5-10)

FRAME 5-11.

After the position of the subgrade line and the shape of the typical of	ross
section are established, cross sections are plotted for each 100-foot station	n on
the adopted centerline in runway construction, and for each 100-foot statio	n on
tangents and every 50 feet on curves in road and taxiway construction.	The
position of the line and the shape of the typical	
are first established.	٠,

2 (5-40)

FRAME 5-41.

For fills over 2 feet high, the factor is 0.85. Cut volume times factor (0.8 of 0.85) gives volume of ______.

 $3\dot{2} + 20 (5-70)$

FRAME 5-71.

Note that in obtaining the volumes under column 5, the stripping volume (column 4) is subtracted from the quantity of excavation entered in column 3. This is because the volume of excavation of column 3 will (1) ______ be used in making the fill. Excavation volume minus (2) _____ volume equals fill volume.

(exceed) (5-100)

FRAME 5-101.

The points of maximum embankment and excavation on the mass diagram are approximately the stations at which the ground line crosses the ______ on the profile.

(subgrade) cross section) (5-11)

FRAME 5-12.

Cross sections are plotted for each ______foot station on the adopted centerline for runways and road ______:

Set 6 Establishing Runway Grade Line by Profile Method

(fill) (5-41)

FRAME 5-42.



(1) not (2) stripping (5-71)

FRAME 5-72.

· Similarly, in obtaining the volume of embanks	ment shown	in colum	in 7, the
stripping volume is added to the quantity of emba	ankment sh	own in c	olumn 3,
because this much additional material must be use	ed to make	the fill.	Embank-
ment volume (column 3) plus	volume	(column	4) gives
embankment volumė.		*,	

(grade line) (5-101)

FRAME 5-102.

The lateral positions of these points, one on the mass diagram or one on the profile, will coincide exactly if there is only cut or fill at each station. If both cut and fill exist at the same stations, their positions correspond only _____



100 (tangents) (5-12)

FRAME 5-13...

Besides at 100-foot intervals, cross sections are plotted at any intermediate place when there is a distinct change along the centerline, and where the natural ground profile and the grade line correspond (earthwork changes from cut to fill). An intermediate interval would be at a ______ change along the centerline and at changes from ______ to ______ to _____.

(worked) (immediately) (5-42)

FRAME 5-43.

However, it is often necessary to establish a tentative grade line as a goide in properly assigning equipment prior to detailed computation of earthwork quantities. Establishment of a _______ grade enables work to proceed before ______ computation of earthwork quantities are made.

(stripping) (net) (5-72) FRAME 5-73.

Net excavation in cubic yards	, available	for co	nstructing	fills is	entered	in
column (1)	. Column	5 (net	excavation	n) for	fills equa	ls
applicable figure in column 3 (2)			figur	e in co	lumn 4.	

(approximately) (5-102)

FRAME 5-103.

The mass diagram represents the algebraic summation of net yardage from station to station. Thus the maximum ordinate above or below any balance line represents the total ______ yardage that is to be moved from cut to fill, disregarding the yardage which is balanced within any 100-foot distance that has both cut and fill.

(distinct) (cut) (fill) (5-13)

FRAME 5-14.

Also, a cross section would be plotted at intermediate places between stations
when the surface on either side of the centerline is uneven enough to require
plotting in order to represent properly the volumes indicated between the station
cross sections. Uneven surfaces between station
are plotted when necessary for greater accuracy.

(tentative) (detailed) (5-43)

FRAME 5-44.

The tentative grade line should not be carried too close to the final grade.

The balance of cut and fill will not be upset if care is taken that cuts and fills are not carried too (1) _______ to the expected final grade line.

The (2) ______ grade line is a guide and space should be left so that the balance of cut and fill are not (3) ______.



(1) 5 (2) minus (5-73)

FRAME 5-74.

Net excavation in cubic yards, multiplied by the proper shrinkage or swell factor is listed in column 6. Net excavation of 2378 cubic yards with shrinkage factor of .9 would be _____ cubic yards.

(net) (5-103)

FRAME 5-104.

In some cases, the excess yardage is not that figured between 100-foot stations, since the yardage is sometimes calculated for shorter or longer distances depending on where the cross sections were taken. Thus in the section of mass diagram (panel 5-6), above the balance line DF, the net yardage which is moved from cut to fill (from section DE to EF) is represented by ordinate ED (vertical distance from E to line DF). The _______ yardage between D and F must be subtotaled from the yardage table panel 5-6.

(cross sections) (5-14)

FR.	A	ME	5-1	5

Cross sections are plotted on	cross section paper. The subgrade elevation
of the finished section at each sta	ation is read from the profile. Cross section
levels are taken from an instrumen	it in the field, if time permits, or from a con-
tour map. The	elevation of the finished section is read
from the profile; cross section leve	els are taken by if pos-
sible or from a	•

(1) close (2) tentative (3) upset (5-44)

FRAME 5-45.

One method of establishing the ______ grade line is to plot the centerline profile and the profiles of the shoulder edges. The tentative subgrade grade line is then plotted on the profile bearing in mind minimum earthwork and efficient haul limits.

(2140) · (5-74)

FRAME 5-75.

pacted, exc disturbed.								nan it did permits,		
in volume,	or s	hrinkage	should	be det	ermined	by t	ests.		•	
. 153	. -	· ,	<u> </u>	•		•		•		
25.9			, ,		•	·	<u>'</u>			

(total) (5-104)

FRAME 5-105.

The net yardage can be taken from the (1) ______
total yardage from (2) ______

(subgrade) (instrument) (contour) (5-15) FRAME 5-16.

Cross sections usually are plotted to the same vertical and horizontal scale, but if the vertical cut or fill is small in comparison with the width, an exaggerated vertical scale may be used without reducing accuracy. In plotting cross section the same vertical and horizontal _______ are generally used.

	.	
(tentative) (5-45)		
FRAME 5-46.	•	_
The centerline (1)	is firs	t plotted and then
i	rade line is plotted on the centerlin and efficient (3)	e profileMinimum
are kept in mind when	plotting the tentative subgrade.	

(shrinkage) (5-75)

FRAME 5-76.

If tests cannot be made, the table in panel 5-7 can be used as a guide. It will be noted that in-place sand has a volume of change of ______ when changed to a loose condition.

(3) mass diagram (2) yardage table (5-105)

FRAME 5-106.

Total yardage cannot be scaled from the mass diagram unless all the cross sections involved show only cut or fill at any section, which is unlikely. ______ yardage cannot generally be scaled from the mass diagram.

(scales) (5-16)

FRAME 5-17.

After the cross sections are plotted, the area can be calculated by several methods. Two simple methods are counting the squares and triangle method.

______ method will

be discussed first.

(1) profile (2) earthwork (3) haul (5-46)

FRAME 5-47.

The grade line corrected for transverse slope is then plotted on the corresponding runway and shoulder edges. The areas between the grade line and the area then obtained.

Ø

(1.11) (5-76)

FRAME 5-77.

After blasting, rock increases in volume. This increase or ______ occurs because the work fragments do not fit closely together and many voids result.

(Total) (5-106)

FRAME 5-107.

If the balance points do not fall on even stations, proper interpolation must be made in the yardage table. Similarly, the net yardage between points F and G, and G and H is represented by the ordinate ______ (the difference between the balance line FH and point G, or 10,000 - 6800 = 3200 cu yd).

("counting the squares") (5-17)
FRAME 5-18.

"Counting the squares" consists of counting the enclosed squares and multiplying the result by the area in square feet of one square. This gives the area of the cross section in square feet. The area in square feet of one square is determined by the horizontal and vertical scales used in plotting the cross section. The number of squares is first counted and this number is multiplied by the area in square feet of

(profile) (5-47)

FRAME 5-48.

Cuts should roughly balance fills. The sum of the areas above the grade line (corrected by shrinkage or expansion factor) is ______ against the sum of the areas below the grade line.

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

(swell) (5-77)

FRAME 5-78.

One hundred cubic yards of solid rock make 125 to 140 cubic yards of embankment, depending on the type of rock, the amount and type of explosive used, and the size to which it is crushed. The increase from 100 cubic yards to ________140 cubic yards of rock is called _______.

(FG) (5-107)

FRAME 5-108.

The mass diagram (panel 5-8) also shows the net quantity to be borrowed or wasted. Remembering that the lines BJ and KM represent an efficient haul distance of 1,000 feet, the excess material between A and B should be

(1) ______ and the material needed for the embankment between J and K should be (2) ______ to void (3) _____ haul.

(one square) (5-18)

of the tentative grade line.

FRAME 5-19.

In the triangle method	, area is obtain	ed by subdiv	iding the d	ross sectio	n
into a series of triangles. G	eometrically, the	e area of a tr	iangle is ½	the produc	et
of the base times its heigh	t (A=bh/2). 互	herefore, the	cross sécti	on area ca	.n
be obtained by adding the	individual produ	cts of base t	imes height	t for all th	ıe
into v	which the cross	section is		an	ď
dividing the sum by					
_			-		
		•	. •		
•					
,					
			•		
•				•	
47					
. 1			. ^*		
		<u> </u>	•		
(balanced) (5-48)	,	Ý	, sq	,	
FRAME 5-49.	&		•		
The tentative grade lin	e is shifted unt	il the areas o	btained are	e roughly i	n
(1) The ba	lancing of cut as	nd fill require	the (2)		



125 (swell) (5-78) FRAME 5-79. If the fill is composed entirely of rock, the full factor for the type of rock being quarried is used. (1) wasted (2) borrowed (3) excessive (5-108) FRAME 5-109. The 1,000-foot distance used in this example, and the resulting borrow and waste are for illustrative purposes only. Actually it will frequently be more economical to haul material several housand feet than to and

(triangles) (subdivided) (2) (5-19) FRAME 5-20.

Bases of the triangles are taken as the vertical distances between the ground and grade lines where the slope of either line (or both) changes. The length of each triangle base is equal to the elevation difference in feet, between ground and grade lines. The altitude of each triangle is taken as the horizontal distance, in feet, between the cross section points at the base and the apex of the triangle. Bases of triangles are vertical distances between the ______ lines where the slope of either one or both changes.

Set 7. Computing Borrow Pit Volumes

(1) balance (2) shifting (5-49)

FRAME 5-50.

There are two methods of computing the volume of material excavated (or to be excavated) from a borrow pit. One method is to take original and final cross sections at right angles to a convenient baseline, determine the cross section ______, and then determine the ______



(swell) (5-79)

FRAME 5-80.

If the rock is placed simultaneously with earth fill and all interstices or voids are carefully filled and compacted, rock swell will roughly equal earth shrinkage, so both factors may be practically _______

(waste) (borrow) (5-109)

FRAME 5-110.

Where there is either waste or borrow, the mass diagram shows the quantity, but not the length and direction of haul. One method of obtaining these is to make a sketch map showing borrow or waste area and the approximate center of mass of the quantities involved. The mass diagram shows the ______ of either waste or borrow.

(ground) (grade) (5-20)			
FRAME 5-21.	_	٠ پ	
The altitude of each triangle is taken as th	he fhorizontal	distance	between
the cross section points at the	and the _	_	
of the triangle.			
	•		
· >			
•			
. •	1		
,			
	•		
			•
•			`
			. ;
(1) areas (2) volume (5-50)			
FRAME 5-51.			

The other method (panel 5-5) is to divide a plan yiew of the pit into a system of squares or rectangles, usually 20 to 50 feet on a side depending on the roughness of surface. The plan view of the pit is first divided into a system of ______ or _____.



5 - 43

(disregarded) (5-80)

FRAME 5-81.

The shrinkage or swell factor is applied to excavation quantities so that the position of the excavation in the embankment will not affect the plotting of the mass diagram. The excavation quantity is found in column ______ of the Earthwork and Mass Diagram (panel 5-6) computation sheet.

(quantity) (5-110)

FRAME 5-111.

The difference in length between any two ordinates is a measure of the total net yardage of excess or deficiency of material between the stations at which the ordinates are drawn. The difference in length between two ordinates will give the amount of net excess or _______ between the stations at which the ordinates are drawn.

(base) (apex) (5-21)

FRAME 5-22.

Thus far each triangle in the series of triangles into which the cross section may be divided has been considered individually. The triangle method, however, goes one step further (panel 5-2). Here it can be seen that the cross section area is more easily computed if two triangles with a common base are considered together. The triangle method considers ______ as one.

(squares) (rectangles) (5-51)

FRAME 5-52.

Next, the difference in elevation of the original ground and the grade of the excavation at the corners of the squares or rectangles is determined and plotted along the plan view. This results in a series of prisms (panel 5-5) from which cross section _____ can be computed.



FRAME 5-82. factor may not be constant through-The swell or (1) _____ out the project. If so, each factor value should be used for the section to which (deficiency) (5-111) FRAME 5-112. Where the mass line ends above the zero ordinate line, there is an excess of excavation to be (1) ______. If the mass line ends below the zero ordinate line, there is a deficiency of of excavation which must be

3 (5-81)

(two) (triangles) (common) (base)_(5-22) FRAME 5-23.

In the triangle method, the altitudes of two triangles are added and then multiplied by the length of their common base. Therefore, the cross section area can be obtained by adding the products of all the pairs having a common base. As before, the sum of all these products is divided by 2 to obtain the true total area. In the triangle method, two triangles with a ______ can be combined and thus cuts the required computations in half.

(areas) (5-52)

FRAME 5-53.

The volume of each prism is determined and then these volumes are ______ to get the total area of the pit.



(1) shrinkage (2) applies (5-82) FRAME 5-83.

'Frames 5-83 through 5-89 pertain to panel 5-6. Total material in cubic yards required to construct fills is entered in column

(1) wasted (2) borrowed (5-112)

FRAME 5-113.

Generally, the average length of haul is approximately equal to the length of a horizontal line drawn midway between the peak of the mass line and the balance line. Line CI (panel 5-8) represents the approximate average length of haul for placing the excavation BD in the embankment (1) ______ of haul for placing the excavation in the embankment (3) ______ of haul

(common) (base) (5-23) FRAME 5-24.

Working from left to right the area of the cross section is obtained as in panel 5-2. Completing the computations in panel 5-2 the area of the cross section is found to be _______ square feet.

(totaled or added) (5-53)

FRAME 5-54.

When the depth of excavation is uniform throughout the pit, the computation of this second method can be expressed in one formula. Referring to panel 5-5, the formula for the borrow pit in cubic yards is:

$$\frac{(n \times dab) + \left(m \times \frac{dab}{2}\right)}{27}$$

where d = average height (depth of excavation)

a, b = length of sides in feet

n = number of squares or rectangles

m = number of triangles

Depth of excavation must be _____ to use the _____ for volume computations.



_	ററ	`
n-	ж×	. 1
1	15.	(5-83

FRAN	4 TC	5_Q/	l

	.The qu	antity	given in	column	7 is	the	sum	of.em	ıbankn	ient	quantitie	s give
in	columns				and	,						
			•									
	•											,
			•	•								ſ
	•		٠.									-A
			•					`			•	
										,	•	
		•				•						
•				,		•		٠.			* .	
			• ′			,	. •			مغ		

Set 10. Selection of Equipment by Use of Mass Diagram

(1) HJ (2) average length (3) KL (5-113)

FRAME 5-114.

In order to explain further the use of the mass diagram in analyzing and planning earthwork operations, consider the portion of the mass diagram from K to M (panel 5-8). Excavation from LM will be placed in embankment



Set 4. Average-End-Area Method

191.1 (5-24)

FRAME 5-25.

The average-end-area method is the method most commonly used to determine the volume between two cross sections or end areas. Use is made of the following formula:

$$V = \frac{L (A_1 + A_2)}{54}$$

Where:

V= volume in cubic yards of the prismoid between areas A_1 and A_2 L= distance in feet between end areas A_1 and $A_2=$ end areas in square feet

In the average-end-area formula L = (1) _____ in (2) _____ between (3) _____ areas, and $A_1 + A_2 = \text{area of } (4)$ _____ sections in square feet.

Set 8. Mass Diagram

(uniform) (formula) (5-54)

FRAME 5-55.

The mass diagram is the best means of making a study of the excess volumes of earthwork between stations on an earthmoving project. It does not take into account balanced yardage between stations. The mass diagram is a means of studying ______ of earthwork between stations.



(3) (4) (5-84)

FRAME 5-85.

Balanced yardage, in cubic yards, between stations is entered in column 8. This is the yardage cancelled out in obtaining the algebraic sum. The yardage cancelled out for station 28 + 00 is ______

(KL) (5-114)

FRAME 5-115.

The direction of haul will be from right to left. This is because this is a hump.

(1) distance (2) feet (3) end (4) cross (or end) (5-25) FRAME 5-26.

If cross sections are taken at full 100-foot stations the volume in cubic yards between successive square foot cross sections $(A_1 \text{ and } A_2)$ may be found directly by the formula

$$V = 1.85 (A_1 + A_2)$$

The above formula may be used when the cross sections are taken at full _______ foot stations.

(excess) (volumes) (5-55)

FRAME 5-56.

The _____ aids in determining the quickest way to complete an earthmoving job and also serves as a guide in determining what equipment to assign to specific portions of the haul.



(93) (5-85)

FRAME 5-86.

The balanced yardage for station 29 + 00 is ______. The balanced yardage figure is used only for the purposes of estimating construction time and the scheduling of men and equipment.

(sag) (5-115)

FRAME 5-116.

13

The average length of haul is represented by the line NN' which is approximately 420 feet. The best equipment for this ______ of ______ is a wheeled tractor scraper combination.

(100) (5-26)

FR	4	M	E 7	=	07
H'K	A	M	ъ.	ີ.	. Z. L

of approximately the same	e shape. The (1) areas must be shape for the formula in either form to be entirely. The greater the difference in (3)
between the two end areas	o
, ,	•
	•
(mass diagram) (5-56) FRAME 5-57. The mass diagram set to assign specific	rves as a guide in determining what



(327) (5-86)

FRAME 5-87.

The algebraic sum for station 28	+ 00 is obt	ained b	y ado	ding net e	embank	cment
amount and factored (1)	F	rom th	is we	see that	in obta	aining
the algebraic sum, the excavation i	is considere	d plus	the	embankr	nent i	s (2)

(length) (haul) (5-116)

FRAME 5-117.

In order to estimate time, equipment, and personnel requirements, it is necessary to know the volume of earthwork between K and M. This is done in two ways — either by selection from the computation sheet, or where applicable, scaling off the volume from ordinates of the mass diagram. The latter method is of sufficient accuracy for most situations. The _______ sheet is used for greater accuracy; the ______ method is suitable for most jobs.

(1) end (2) accurate (3) shape (5-27) FRAME 5-28.

Even though an error as great as 50% can occur and the results obtained are approximate, this method is consistent with other field computations and more accuracy is not justified. This method is of sufficient _______ for use in estimating earthwork volumes.

(equipment) (haul) (portions) (5-57) FRAME 5-58.

(excavation) (minus) (5-87)

FRAME 5-88.

The ordinate or cumulative total of the items in column 9 is placed in column _____, with the proper algebraic sign.

(computation) (scaling) (5-117)

FRAME 5-118.

If the computation sheet is used in combination with the mass diagram, the procedure below is followed. Since K does not fall at an even station, it is necessary to determine this point and compute additional values to be inserted in the computation sheet (panel 5-6). This is done by straight-line arithmetic interpolation. Points not falling at an even station are computed by straight-line and are inserted in the computation sheet.

(accuracy) (5-28)

FRAME 5-29.

Volumes by average end areas may be obtained directly from an earthwork table. Note that the table (panel 5-3) is to be used with the sum of end areas and that it is not necessary to calculate the average end areas. A table can be used which requires only the ______ of the end areas to find the volume.

(linear distance) (5-58)

FRAME 5-59.

The algebraic sum of the embankment and the excavation is plotted as the ordinate, and the linear distance as the abcissa. The algebraic sum of the embankment and the excavation is plotted as the ______.

Plotting the Mass Diagram

(10) (5-88)

FRAME 5-89.

For ease in comparison, the horizontal scale for the mass diagram and the centerline profile should be the same - and one placed directly above the other as shown in panel 5-8. The vertical scale for mass diagram may be any convenient one — such as 1,000, 5,000, or 10,000 cubic yards per inch. The vertical scale for the centerline profile should be normally plotted ground elevations in feet. The horizontal scales of the mass diagram and the centerline profile are the

(arithmetic) (interpolation) (5-118)

FRAME 5-119.

Point K (panel 5-8) is found to be at station 44 + 92. The following values are computed and inserted in the yardage table: the numbers for station 46 + 00replace those shown in the tabulation panel 5-6.

(1)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)
44 + 92	355	1213	35 5.	-858	-746
46 + 00	1659	5767	1659	· -4108	-3362

The above numbers are the corrections to be made in respective columns of the sheet.

(sum) (5-29)

FRAME 5-30.

Following is an example of the use of the earthwork table in Panel 5-3. Two cross sections 100 feet apart have areas of 100.1 and 300.2 square feet respectively. The sum of the areas is 400.3 square feet. The figure 400 is found to the left of the heavy line under the column headed _______. On the same line with 400 and under the column 0.3 (to the right of the heavy line) is found the figure ______.

Turn back to bottom of of page 5-3.

(ordinate) (5-59)

FRAME 5-60.

The algebraic sums are obtained by using excavation quantities as positive and embankment quantities as negative. Positive values are ______ quantities.

Turn back to top of page 5-4.

(same) (5-89)

FRAME 5-90.

The vertical scale of the centerline profile consists of the ______
in feet, and the vertical scale of the mass diagram consists of any ______
one in cubic yards per inch.

Turn back to bottom of page 5-4.

(computation) (5-119)

FRAME 5-120.

Having established the numbers for stations 46 + 00, to find the value of earthwork between stations K and M proceed as in panel 5-9. The final quantity (______ cu yds) is the volume which must be used in determining equipment and personnel requirements and in establishing construction schedules.

(21,460) (5-120)

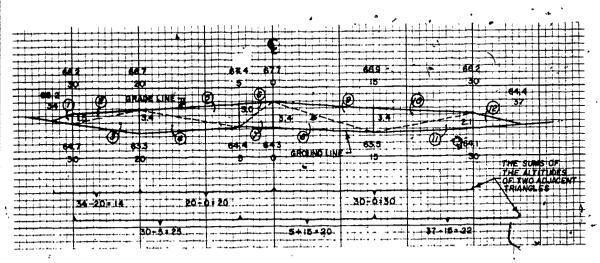
END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW



Panel 5-1. Volume of Cuts and Fills in Cubic Yards per 700 feet of Length (for Level Sections).

· -	6	,		-		-					
	.			٠ -	٥	.		ъ -	01	=	12
Average depth of cut		Side	slope 1 to 1	width of b	ase of cut o	Side slope 1 to 1-width of base of cut or crown of fill	ll (feet)		Add for each ad-	PPV	Add
or height of fill (feet)	41	16	, 18	8	24	- 58	08	45	2 feet of	where slope is 1 ½ to 1	where slope is 2 to 1
٠	٠	`								<u> </u>	
	26	63	20	. 82	92	107	115	159	7	6	_
7	119	133	148	163	.192	222	237	326	. 4	,	# <u>u</u>
	681	211	233	256	300	344	367	200	22	- 19	33
	267	296	326	356	415	. 474	504	682	3 8	30	, 05.
	352	389	426	463	537	611	648	870	37	.46	- 0,2,0
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	444	486	533	218	299	756	800	1,065	45	29	133
	544	296	648	200	803	· 907	959	1.271	52	6	181
× ×	652	711	220	830	948	1.067	1.126	1.483	29	118	237
	292	833	006	296	1.400	1,233	1.300	1,700	29	150	300
10.	688 888	936	1.037	1,111	1.259	1,407	1,481	1.928	74	185	320
	1,019	1,100	1,181	1,263	1.426	1,589	1,670	2,159	\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \	224	448
	1,156	1,244	1,338	1,422	1.600	1,778	1,867	1 2,400		267	534
13	1.300	1,396	1,493	1.589	1,781	1.974	2.070	2.649	96		626
14	205.1	1,550	1,659	1.763	1.970	2.178	2,281	2,904	104	363	4725
16	1.011	1.722	1,833	1.944	2.166	2,389	2,500	3,167	, 111	426	852
17	1.78	1.890	2.015	2,133	2,370	2.607	2.726	3,437	119	474	948
16		2.078	2.204	2,330	2.581	2,833	2,959	3,715	126	534	1 068
10		2.267	2.400	2,533	2,800	3,067	3,200	4,000	133	598	1 196
		2.463	2.604	2.744	3,025	3,307	3.448	4.293	141	667	1 334
20	_	2.667	2,815	2.963	3,259	3,556		4 593	148	740	1,004
21	2,722	2.878	3,033	3,189	3,500	3 811		4 500	156	2.0	1,400
22	-	3.096	3.259	3.422	3,748	4.074	4,237	5,215	163	894	1 788.
			Ŧ,			,			•	;	3

Panel 5-2. Triangle Method of Determining Cross Section Areas.



Remember (frame 5-23):

The sums of the altitudes of two adjacent triangles are taken as the harizantal distance in feet between the crass section points adjacent to their camman base.

(See above crass section)

The camman base is taken as the vertical distance between the graund line and grade line at the paint of change between the two adjacent triangles.

Warking fram left to right, the area of the crass section is obtained as fallows:

Base × Total Altitude =
$$2 \times \text{Area}$$
 of the Twa Triangles

Triangles 1 & 2 = $1.5 \times (34 - 20) = 1.5 \times 14 = 21.0$

3 & 4 = $3.4 \times (30 - 5) = 3.4 \times (25 = 85.0)$

etc. $3.0 \times (20 - 0) =$
 $3.4 \times (5 + 15) =$
 $3.4 \times (30 - 0) =$
 $2.1 \times (37 - 15) =$

Dan't farget to divide area obtained by 2 (frame 5-19)

Panel 5-3. Cubic Yards in 100-foot Prisms with Specified Sums of End Areas.

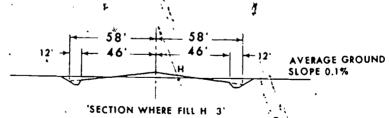
***	2,300	2,500	2,700	2,600	2.500	2,400	2,300	2,200	2,100	2,000	1,900	1,800	1,700	1,600	1,560	1,400	1,390	1.300	1,100	1.0
620	1,566	1,512	1,458	1,404	1,350	1.296	1,242	1.188	1,134	1,080	1.026	972	918	864	810	756	700	, ,,,,		_
621	1,567	1,513	1,459	1,405	1,351	1,297	1,243	1,189	1.135	1	1,027		919	865	811	757	702 703	648 649	594	5
622	1,568	1,514	1.460	1,406	1,352	1,298	1.244	1,190	1,136	1,082		974	920	866	812	758	704	650	595 596	5
623	1,569	1.515	1,461	1,407		1,299			1,137	1,083	1.029	975	921	867	813	759	705	651	597	5
624	1,570	1,516	1.462	1,408		1,300					1,030	976	922	868	814	760	706	652	598	. 5
626 636	1,571 1,572	1,517	1,463	1,409	1.355	1,301			1 .	1,085		977	923	869	815	761	707	653	. 599	5
627	1,573	1,519	1,464	1,411		1,302 1,303	1,248	1.194		1.086		978	924	870	816	762	708	654	600	5
622	1,574	1,520	1,466	1,412	,	1,303	1,249		1,141 1,142	1,087	1.033	979 980	925	871	817	763	709	665	601	5
623	1,575	1,521	1,467	1,413		1,305	1,251		1,143	1,089	1,035	981	926 927	872 873	818 319	764	710	656	602	5
630	1,576	1,522	1.468	1,414		1,306	1,252	1.198	1,144	1,090	1,036	982	928	874	820	765 766	711	657	603	5
631	1,577	1,523	1.469	1,415		1.307	1,253			1.091	-	983	929	875	821	767	712 713	658	604	5
632	1,678	1,524	1.470	1,416	1.362	1,308	1,254	1,200		1.092		984	930	876	822	768	714	659 660	605 606	5 5
133	1,579	1,525	1,471	1,417	1,363	1,309	1,255	1.201	1,137	1.093	1,039	985	931	877	823	769	715	661	607	5
634	1,580	1,526	1.472	1,418	-	1,310	-,	1,202	1,148	1,094	1,040	986	932	878	824	770	716	662	608	5
135	1,581	1,527	1:473	1.419		1,311	1,257	1.203	1,149	1.095	1,041	987	933	879	825	771	717	663	609	5
136	1,582	1,528	1.474	1.420		1.312	1,258	1,204	1,150	1.096		988	934	880	826	772	718	664	610	5
637 638	1,584	1,529	1,475	1,421		1,313	1,259	1.205	1,151	1.097	1.043	989	935	881	827	773	719	665	611	5
137	1,585	1,531	1,477	1.423	1.368	1,314	1,260	1.206	1,152	1.098	1,044	,990	936	882 883	828	774	720	666	612	5
140	1,586	1,532	1,478	1.424	1,370		1,261	1,207	1.153		1.045	991	937		829	775	721	667	613	5
141	1.587	1,533	1,479	1.425	1,371		1,263	1,209	1.155	1,100	1.046	992	938	384	830	776	722	668	614	5
142	1,588	1,534	1,480	1.426		1,318	1,264	1,210	1.156	1.101 1.102	1,048	993	939 940	885	231	777	723	669	615	. 8
[23]	1,589	1.535	1,481	1,427	1,373		1.265	1,211	1.157		1.049	995	941	886	832 833	778	724	670	616	5
144	1,590	1.536	1.482	1,428	1,374		1,266	1,212	1.158	1,104	1.050	996	942	888	834	780	725	671	617	5 د ج
146	1,591	1,537	1,483	1,429	1.375	1.321	1,267	1,213	1,159	1,105	1,051	997	943	889	835	781	727	673	619	
H4	1,592	1,538	1,484	1,430	1.376	1 322	1,168	1,214	1,160	1,106	1,052	998	944	890	836	782	728	674	620	·6 5
47	1,593	1,539	1,485	1,431	1,377	1,323	1,269		1,161	1.107	1,053	999	945	891	837	783	729	675	621	5
48	1,694	1,540	1.486	1.432	1.378	1,324	1.270	,	1,162	1,108	1,054	1,000	946	892	838	784	780	676	622	· 5
49	1,595	1,541	1.487	1.433		1,325			1.163	1.109	1.055	1.001	947	893	839	785	.731	677	623	5
150	1,596	1,542	1.488	1,434	1.380	1,326		1	1,164	1,110	1.056	1,002	948	894	840	786	732	678	624	5
152	1,598	1,544	1.489	1.435	1,881	1,327		1	1,165	1.111	1.057	1.003	949	895	841	787	733	679	625	5
43	1,599	1,545	1,491	1.437	1,382	1,328		- 1	1.166	1.112	1.058	1.004	950	896	842	788	734	680	626	5
164	1,600	1,546	1.492	1,438		1,330			1,167	1.113	1.059	1.005	951	897	843	789	735	681	627	5
66]	1,601	1,547	1,493	1,439		1,331		1,223		1.114	1,061	1,006	952	898 899	844	790	736	682	628	5
154	1,602	1.548	1.494	1,440	-	1,332			1,170	1,116	- 1	1,007	953 954	900	845	791	737	683	629	Ş
57	1,603	1,549	1,495	1,441	' '				1,171	1,117	* I	1,009	955	901	846	792 793	738	684	630	Ş
58	1,604	1,550	1,496	1.442	1,388	1,334	1,280		1,172	1.118	11064	1.010	956	902	848	794	739	685 686	631	5
59	1,605	1,551	1.497	1,443				1,227	1,173		1,065	1,011	957	903	849	795	741	687	633	5
*	1,606	1,552	1.498	1,444					1,174	1,120	1,066	1,012	958	904	850	796	742	688	634	. 5
61 82	1,607	1,553	1,499	1,445					1,175	1,121	1.067	1,013	959	905	851	797	743	689	635	- 5
63	1,608	1,554	1,500	1,446	,			1	1,176	1.122	1.068	1,014	960	906	852	798	744	690	639	~ 51
44	1,610	1,556	1.501	1.447					1.177	1,123	1.069	1,015	961	907	853	799	745	691	637	45
45	1,611	1,557	1.502	1,449		- 1	*		1,178	1.124	1,070	1,016	962	908	854	800	746	692	638	Ď.
44	1,612	1,558	1.504	1,450					1.179	- 1	1.071	1.017	963 984	909	855	801	767	1 693	639	8
67	1,613	1,559	1,505	1,451	• :	,		- 1	1.180		1.072	1,018	964	910	856 857	802	748	,694	640	5
43	1,614	1,540	1,506	1.452	- 1			,	1	- 1	1.074	1.020	966	911	858	803 804	749	695	641	58
69	1,675	1,561	1,507	1,453	3						1,075	1,021	967	913	859	805	* 1 1-	696	642	51
70	1,616	1,562	1.508	1.454		- 1	- 1			- 1	1,076	1.022	968	914	860	806	751	697	643	51
71	1,617	1.563	1,509	1,455						- 1	1.077	1.023	969	915	861	807		698	645	59 59
72	1,618	1.564	1.51,0	1,456	1,402	1,348			i		- 1	1.024	970	916	862	808	754		646	59
73	1,619	1,565	1.511	1,457	1.403	1.349	1,295			1.133		1,025	971	917	863	809	755	7011	647	51

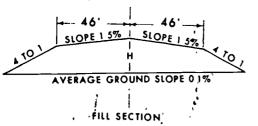
Panel 5-3. Continued.

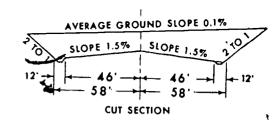
											L							-	
900	800	700	600	500	400	300	200	100	0	0.0	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	0 5	0.6	0.7	0.8	0.9
486	432	378	324	编	216	162	108	54	U	6.00	0.18	0 37	0.56	0.74	0 93	1 11	1 30	1 45	1.67
487	433	379	325	271	217	163	109	55	1	1.85	2.04	2.22	2.41	2 59	2 78	2 96	3.15	3 33	3.52
488	434	380	326	272	218	164	110	66	2	3.70	3.89	4.07	4.26	4.44	4.63	4.82	5 00	5.18	5.37
489	435	381	327	273	219	165	111	57	→ 3	5.56	5.74	5.93	6,11	6.30	6.48	6.67	6 85	7.94	7.22
490	436	382	328	274	220	166	112	58	4	7.41	7.59	7.78	7.96	8.15	8.33	8.52	8.70	8.89	9.07
491	437	383	329	275	221	167	113	59	5	9.26	9.44	9.63	9.81	10.00;	10.19	10.37	· 10.66	19.74	10.93
492	438	384	330	276	222	168	114	60	6	11 11	11.30	11 48	11 67	11.85	12 04	12.22	12.41	12.59	12.78
493	439	385	331	277	223	169	115	61	7	12.96	13.15	13 33	13.52	13.70	13 89	14.07	14 26	14 44	T4.68
494	440	1386	332	278	224	170	116	62	8	14 82	15.00	15.19	15.37	15.56	15.74	15.93	16.11	16 30	16.48
495	443	387	333	279	225	171	117	63	9	16.67	16.85	17 04	17 22	17 41	17.59	17 78	17 96	18 15	18.23
496	442	388	334	280	226	172	118	64	10	18.52	18.70	18 89	19.07	19 26	19 44	19 63	19.82	20 00	20.18
497	443	389	335	281	227	173	119	65	11	20 37	20.56	20.74	20.93	21 11	21.30	21 48	21 67	21 85	22.04
498	444	390	336	282	228	174	120	66	12	22 22	22.41	22 59	22.78	22.96	23 15	23 33	23.52	23.70	23.89
499	445	391	337	283	229	175	121	67	13	24 07	24 26	24 44 ,	24 63	24.82	25.00	25.18	25.87	25.56	25.74
8	446	892	338	284	230	176	122	68	14	25.93	26 11	₹26.30	26.48	26.67	26.85	27.04	27 22	27.41	27.59
501	447	393	339	285	281	177	123	69	16	27 78	27.96	28 15	28 33	28 52	28.70	28.89	29 07	29.26	29.44
502	448	394	340	286	232	178	124	70	16	29.63	29.82	30.00	30.18	30.37	30 56	30.74	30.93	31.11	31.30
503	449	395	341	287	233	179	125	71	17	31.48	31.67	31.85	32.04	32.22	32.41	32 59	32.78	32.96	33.15
504	450	396 397	342	288	234	180	126 127	72	18	33 33	33.52	33 70	33.89	84.07	34.26	34.44	34.63	34.82	35.00
505	451 452	398	343 344	289 296	235 236	181 182	128	73 74	19	35.18 37.04	35.37	35 56	35.74	35.93	36 11	36.30	36.48	36.67	36.85
506	453	399	345	290	237			75	8 0	38 89	37.22	37.41	37.59	37.78	37.96	38.15	38.33	38.52	38.70
507	454	400	346	292	238	188 184	129 130	76	21	40.74	39.07 40.93	39.26	39.44	39.63	39.82	40.00	40.19	40.37	40.56
508	455	401	347	293	239	185	131	77			42.78	41.11	41.30	41.48	41.67	41.85	42.04	42.22	42.41
509	456	402	348	294	240	186	132	78	23	42.59	44.63	42.96 44.81	43.15	43.33	43.52	43.70	43.89	44.07	44.26
510 511	457	403	349	295	241	187	132	79	24 25	44.44 46.30	46.48	46 67	45 00 46.85	45.19	45.37	45.56	45.74	45.93	46.12
512	458	404	350	296	242	188	134	80	26	48.15	48.33	48.52	48.70	48.89	49.07	47.41	47.59	47.78	47.96
513	459	405	351	297	248	189	135	81	27	50.00	60.19	50.37	50.56	50.74	50.93	49 26 51.11	49.44 51.30	51.48	49.82
514	460	406	. 352	298	244	190	136	82	28	51.84	52.04	52.22	52.41	52.59	52.78	52.96	• 53.15	53.33	61.67 58.52
515	461	407	353	299	245	191	137	83	29	53 70	53.89	54 07	54.26	54.44	54.63	54.81	55.00	55.46	55. 3 7
516	462	408	354	300	246	192	138	84	30	55.56	55 74	55 93	56.11	56.30	56.48	56.67	56.85	57.04	67.22
517	463	409	355	301	247	193	139	85	31	57 41	57.59	57178	57.96	58.15	58.33	68.52	58.70	58.89	59.07
518	464	410	356	302	248	194	140	86	32	59 26	759.44	59 63	59.82	60.00	60.18	60.37	60.56	60 74	60.98
519	465	411	357	303	249	195	141	87	33	61.11	61 30	61 48	61 67	61.85	62 04	62 22	62.41	62.59	62.78
520	466	412	358	304	250	196	142	88	34	62 96	63 15	63 33	63 52	63.70	63 89	64.07	64.26	64.44	64.63
521	467	413	359	305	251	197	143	89	35	64 82	65.00	65.18	65.37	65.56	65.74	65.93	66.11	66.30	66.48
522	468	414	360	306	262	198	144	90	36	66 67	66.85	67 04	67.22	67.41	67 59	67 78	67.96	68 15	68.83
523	469	416	361	307	253	199	145	91	37	68 52	68 70	68.89	69 07	69.26	69.44	69 63	69.82	70.00	70.18
524	470	416	362	308	254	200	146	92	38	70 37	70 56	70 74	70.93	71.11	71.30	71.48	71.67	71.86	72.04
525	471	417	363	309	255	201	147	93	69	72.22	72 41	72 59	72.78	72 96	73 15	73 33	73.52	73 70	73.89
526	472	418	364	310	256	202	148	94	40	74.07	74 26	74.44	74.63	74 82	75 00	75 18	75.37	75.56	75.74
527	473	. 419	365	311	257	203	149	95	41	75 93	76.11	76 30	76.48	76.67	76 85	77.04	77.22	77 41	77.59
628	474	420	366	312	258	204	150	96	42	77 78	77 96	78.15	78 33	78.52	78.70	78.89	79.07	79.25	79.44
529	475	421	367	313	269	205	151	97	43	79 63	79 82	80.00	80.18	80.37	80.56	80.74	80.93	81.11	81.30
530	476	422	368	16	260	206	152	98	44	81 48	81 67	81.85	82 04	-82.22	82.41	82.59	82.78	82.96	88.15
531	477	423	369		261	207	153	99	.45	83 33	83.52	83.70	83 89	84.07	84 26	84 44	84.63	, 84.82	85.00
532	478	424	370	316	262	208	154	100	46	85 19	85.37	85.56	85.74	85.93	86 11	86 30	86.48	86.67	86.85
533	479	425	371	317	263	209	165	101	47	87 04	87.22	87 41	87 59	87.78	87.96	88.15	- 88.33	88 52	88.70
534	480	426	372	318	264	210	156	102	48	88.89	89.07	89 26	89 44	89.63	89 82	90 00	90.18	90 37	90.56
535	481	427	373	319	265	211	157	103	49	90.74	90.93	91 11	91.30	91.48	91.67	91.85	92.04	92.22	92.41
536	482	428	374	320	266	212	168	104	50	92 59	92 78	92.96	93.15	93.33	93.52	93.70	93.89	94.07	94.26
537	483	429	375	321	267	213	159	105	61	94 44	94 63	94 82	95.00	95.18	95 37	95 56	95.74	96.93	96.11
,338	484	430	376 377	322 323	268 269	214 215	160 161	106 107	52	96 30	96 48	96.67	96.85	97.04	97.22	97.41	97.59	97.78	97.96
539	485	43.1	311	323	269	215	101	101	53	98 15	98.33	98 52	98.70	98 89	99.07	99.26	99.44	99.63	99. 82
'			'			•			<u>'</u>										
,	•							٠.											

ERIC

Ranel 5-4. Method of Making Quick Preliminary Estimate of Airfield



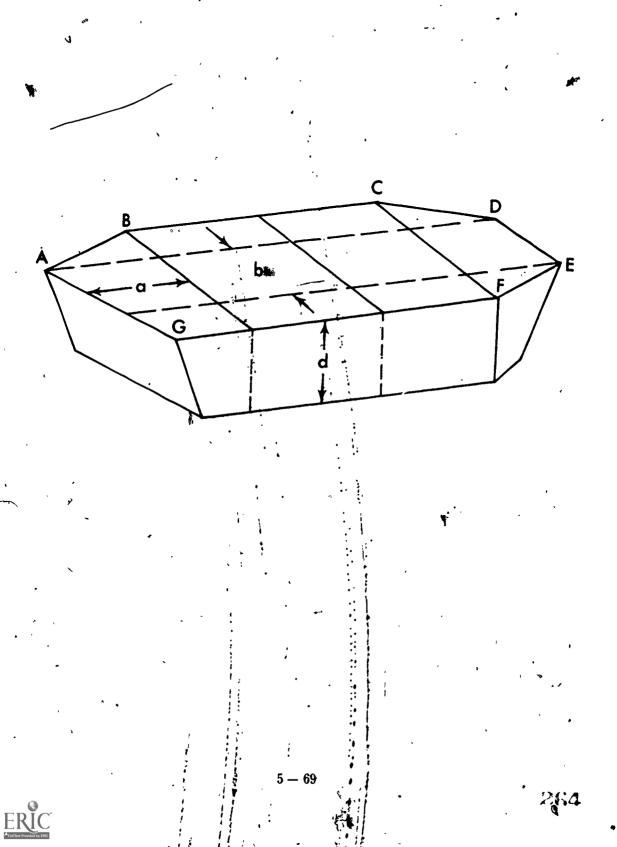




AVERAGE DEPTH OF CUT OR HEIGHT OF FILL IN FEET	, AOFR	MES IN CU	BIC YARDS PER	100 FEET OF LENGTH
DIMENSION H	FILL	CUT	FACTOR CUT	CUT TIMES FACTOR
- FILL-0	0	500	0.8	400
CUT-0	0	500	0.8	400
fitt-1	85	165	0.8	132
CUT-1 ,		830	. 0.8	664
FILL, 2	295	, 20		16
CUT/2	Ţ.	1,375	0.8	1,100
FILL-3	700			A
GUT-3		1,760	0.85	1,495
FILL-4	1,080			, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
CUT-4		1,975	0.85	1,680
FILL-5	1.475			
CUT5		2,350	0,85	2,000

FACTOR OF CUT TO FILL BASED ON 125 CU.YDS. OF EXCAVATION REQUIRED TO MAKE 100 CU.YDS. OF FILL (100/125=0.8) CUT TIMES FACTOR GIVES VOLUME OF FILL THAT CAN BE MADE FROM CUT.

Panel 5-5. Layout for Determining Volume of Borrow Pit.



Panel 5-6. Typical Earthwork and Mass Diagram Computation Sheet.

. (1)	End	2) area		(3) .	Strl	(4) pping	(5 <u>)</u>	(6) Excava.	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)
Station	Cut sq ft	Fill sq ft,	Excava- tion cu. yd	Embank- ment cu. yd	Cut section cu. yd	Fill section cu yd	Net exca- vation cu. yd	factor (0 9) cu yd	Net em- bank- ment cu yd.	Balanced yardage* cu. yd	Algebraic sum	Ordina
			İ						•			
28+00	116	9	537	93			537	483	93	93	+390	0.
29+00	174	41	363	333			363	327	333	327	6	+390
30+00	22	139	778	674		1	778	700	674	674	+26	+384
31+75	218	68	693	170			693	624	170	170	+454	+410
32+20	614	136	2,622	201	244	42	2,378	2,140	243	243	+1.897	+864
33+00	1, 156	0	4,167	`0	342	0	3,825	3,442	0	1 0	+3,442	+2,76
33+90	1,345	0	4,551	0	416	0	4,135	3,722	0	0	+3.722	+6.20
35+00	889	0	2,459	130	308	33	2,151	1,936	163	163	+1,773	+9,92
36+00	438	70	630	652	93	99	537	483	751	483	-268	+11.6
36+50	241	635	604	2,102	64	171	540	486	2,273	486	-1.787	+11.4
37+00	411	1,634	2,918	5,015	197	306	2,721	2,449	5,321	2,449	-2.872	+9.64
38+00	1,165	1 074	4,133	2,233	278	197	3,855	3,470	2,430	2,430	+1.040	+6.77
39+00	1-,066	132	2,915	467	278	136	2,637	2,373	603	- 603	+1.770	+7.81
40+00	508	119	879	212	177	65	702	632	277	277	+355	+9.58
40+65	222	56	166	331	69	46	97	87	344	87	257	+9,93
41+00	35	454	196	2,830	100	250	96	86	3.080	86	-2,994	+9.67
42+00	71	1,074	1,730	2,000	211	153	1,519	1,367	2,153	1,367	786	- +6,68
43+00	862	, 5	1,918	2,937	217	187	1,701	1,531	3,124	1,531	-1.593	+5.89
44+00	174	1,582	679	3,013	. 107	204	572	515	3,217	515	-2,702	+4.30
44+70	349	742	2,480	6.673	242	307	2,238	2,014	6,980	2,014	-4.966	+1.60
46+00	680	2,029	2,037	7,307	172	286	1,865	1,678	7,593	1,678	-5.915	-3,36
47+00	419	1,916	2,922	4,656	206	241	2,716	2,444	4,897	2,444	-2,453	9,27
48+00	1,159	598	3,589	1,780	202	142	3,378	3,040	1.922	1.922	+1,118	-11,7
48+90	989	470	4,897	957	356	76	4,541	4,087	1.033	1,033	+3,054	-10.6
50+00	1,415	0	3,926	0	389	0	3,537	3,183	0	0	+3,183	-7,55
51+00 .	.704	. 0	2,511	0	372	0	2,139	1,925	ő	- 0	+1.925	-4.37
52+00	651	0	2,493	0	364	0	2,129	1.916	ō	· 0	+1,916	-2,45
53+00	695	0	1,496	74	275	50	1,221	1,099	124	124	+975	534
54+00	112	41	733	74	256	50	477	429	124	124	+305	+441.
55+00	283	0	, ,	-			•					+746
Grand		<u> </u>										
total			60,013	44 ,914	5,935	3,041	54,078	48,668	47,922	21,323		

^{*} Balanced yardage (compacted) between stations is used only for purposes of estimating construction time and the scheduling of men and equipment.

FRIC

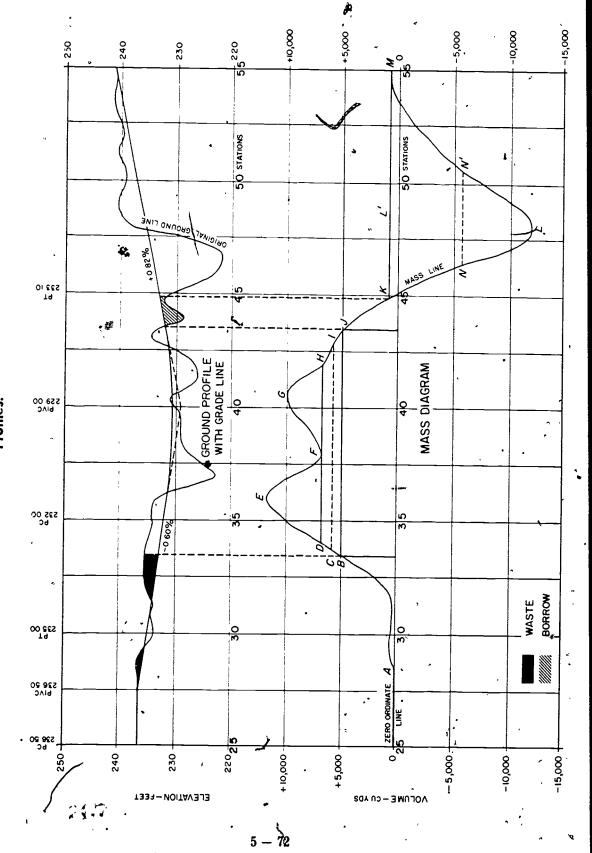
5 — 70

Panel 5-7. Soil Conversion Factors.

	Initial .		Converted to	
Soil type	condition	In-place	Loose	Compacted
Sand	In-place Loose Compacted	.90 1.05	1.11 — 1.17	.95 .86 —
Common	In-place Loose Compacted .	.80 1.11	1.25 — 1.39	.90 .72
Clay	In-place Loose Compacted	.70 ·1.11	1.43 — 1.59	.90 .63 —
Rock	In-place Loose Compacted	, .67 .77 /	1.50 .— 1.15	1.30 .87 —



Panel 5-8. Mass Diagram in Combination with Centerline and Grade Profiles.





Panel 5-9. Computation of Earthwork Volume by Arithmetic Straightline Proportion Using Mass Diagram and Computation Sheet.

To find the volume of earthwork between stations K and M proceed as follows:

- (1) Take the largest ordinate below the zero ordinate level (11,730).
- (2) Add to this volume the value of the ordinate above the zero line (the value of M at 55 or 746).
 11,730

+ 746

12,476 yardage without balanced material

- (3) Add balanced values (col 8) from station 46 + 00 to 55 + 00. This is 7325.
- (4) Using straight line proportion between 44 + 70 and 46 + 00 the balanced yardage between 44 + 92 and 46 + 00 is determined to be 1659.
- (5) Add 1659 to 7325 + 8,984/ 8984 total balanced yardage 21,460

LESSON 5

SELF TEŞT

Note:	question refer	exercises compris to a frame or p te your answer in t	anel containing	infor mation	related to the
2	finished answe those given for	ring all the question this lesson in the ese feview exercises.	ns for this lessor e back of this be	, compare you	r'answers with
in a cu	t 300 feet in leng	ble in panel 5-1, wgth, 26 feet wide at section)? (frame f	the base with 11	to 1 slopes a) of earthwork and an average
		-	· <u>·</u>		·
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				•
					1 +
	e %			•	
the corpanel	mbined tõtal are	angle method for the care in square feet o	the cross section f triangles 7, 8,	shown in par 9, and 10? (f	iel 5-2, what is rame 5-24 and
	٠	•			
			·		
,				• ,	-
	·· -				
		•		•	
sum of volume	the end areas of cut in cubic	ge-end-area method to find the volume yards (round off to anel 5-3) (frames 5	. Referring to p nearest 10ths) b	anel 5-6, what etween station	would be the
4	, ,		, oo, o o <u>o,</u> panon	, o o una o o,	. •
			•	•	
1	•	•			•
		,	<u> </u>	*	
In prep	paring a table for	runway earthworl r airfield earthworl Under 2 feet? (p	k estimates, wha	t cut-to-fill fac	tor is used for
					<u> </u>
		▼.			



2.00

				-			•
							- ,
				,			~
	•		,	0	•		
6 Podevas	af ahmimle	4		6			
6. Bećause o rades between cut n embankment, ho xcavation to balan	tś and en ow many (nbankme cubic yai	nts. If rds of in	1200 cubi -place sai	ic yards ' nd should	of fill are I be remo	required fo
		•		•		<u> </u>	
•					•		
			1				
	•	•			•		
-94)			· \	~			-
			_			<u>, </u>	
							1
					•	<u> </u>	
,							
8. If the mass tation to station, v epresent? (frame	what does	represe the max	nts the a	llgebraic rdinate a	summation bove or l	on of net y	yardage from balance line
tation to station, v	what does	the max	nts the a	llgebraic rdinate a	summation bove or l	on of net y	vardage from balance line
tation to station, v	what does	represe	nts the a	llgebraic rdinate a	summation bove or l	on of net y	vardage from balance line
tation to station, v	what does	the max	nts the a	lgebraic rdinate a	summatic bove or I	on of net y	vardage from balance line
tation to station, v	what does	the max	nts the a	llgebraic rdinate a	summation bove or I	on of net y	vardage from balance line
tation to station, v	what does	represe the max	nts the a	lgebraic rdinate a	summatic bove or I	on of net y	vardage from balance line
9. Referring	what does 5-103)	the max	ram (par	rdinate a	bove or I	oelow any	balance line
9. Referring hould be made from	what does 5-103)	the max	ram (par	rdinate a	bove or I	oelow any	balance line
tation to station, vepresent? (frame	what does 5-103)	the max	ram (par	rdinate a	bove or I	oelow any	balance lin



 There are two ways equipment, and personnel required from column 8, computation v 	uirements for ea	arth moving pr	ojects. One is l	by selection
•		,		
,	•			
	•			*
		•		
11. The purposes of eart cuts and fills, and to plan the (making up subgrade and base tions? (frame 5.2)	he most econor	nical haul of n	naterial. Whic	h materials
•	•			
	٠		,	-
,				•
<u> </u>			<u> </u>	
	ì			*
12. At what intervals a (frames 5-12 to 5-14)	ire cross sectio	- Plotted and		
				-
		£	-	
13. Using the "triangle area of the cross section sho thirty feet right of the center."	wn in Panel 5-	2 from five fee	section areas, et left of the co	what is the enterline to
			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	, , , , ,		114.75 114.75 114.75	· •
			The state of the s	All Survey
- ,		• / ·		
14. Describe the "count areas. (frame 5-18)	ting the square	s" method of a	pproximating c	ross section
areas. (frame 0-10)	,			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	•	•		7 . 11
<u>*</u>	_	•		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				



ı				
			*	
` ;	·			
		•	_	
				
16. What is the	e purpose of establis	shing a tentative r	unway grade line?	(frame
·42 to 5·44)	- parposo of colubin	oming a concactive r	-	\II allic
	•••			
			·	
*	*		•	
4			_	
		٠		
	ne method discussed	d in the text for p	olotting a tentative	runwa
rade line. (frame 5	5.45 to 5.49)		•	
,			•	-
<u> </u>	· · ·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
\$ 1			•	· ·
* 1	· (*			
1	· (*			
			,	· · · ·
18. There are	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputed
18. There are the final step howe		which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec 50, 5-5
18. There are he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec 50, 5-5
18. There are he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec
18. There are he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec 50, 5-5
18. There are he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec 50, 5-5
18. There are he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit	volumes maybe co	mputec 50, 5-5
he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit both. What is this	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5.5	50, 5-5
he final step howe	two methods by wer is common to help 5-6, what is the v	which borrow pit both. What is this work work when the contraction will be contracted by the contracted by the contraction will be contracted by t	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5.5	50, 5-5
he final step howe	two methods by w	which borrow pit both. What is this work work when the contraction will be contracted by the contracted by the contraction will be contracted by t	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5.5	50, 5-5
he final step howe	two methods by wer is common to help 5-6, what is the v	which borrow pit both. What is this work work when the contraction will be contracted by the contracted by the contraction will be contracted by t	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5.5	50, 5-5
he final step howe	two methods by wer is common to help 5-6, what is the v	which borrow pit both. What is this work work when the contraction will be contracted by the contracted by the contraction will be contracted by t	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5.5	50, 5-5
19. Using pane tations 41 + 00 an	two methods by wer is common to help 5-6, what is the v	which borrow pit both. What is this volume of excavati 5-6 and frame 5-6	volumes maybe cons step? (frames 5-6	50, 5-5

ve the following information of an assum Excavation (cu \dot{y} d) $\stackrel{>}{=}$ 2,169

Embankment (cu yd) = 1,365

* Stri	ipping volume Cut section (c	u vd) = 214	•		
•	Fill section (c	=		•	
	net excavatio 5.72 and pane		ards for this	station? Net	embankment?
		,			-
· ·					
					
21. Rei name and ni	ferring to pane umber of colum	l 5-6, how are	the values of panel 5-6, fran	f column 6 co ne 5-74)	mputed? Give
•				-	
¥	-				
	e algebraic sum at is the meani				
	, 14	•		•	
		1			
23. Wh (frame 5-92)	nat is the meani	ng of an ascen	ding or descen	ding mass line	in a diagram?
.		3 .	<u>, </u>		
			· -		
	·*.		` . •		_
24. Ma diagram. Ir (frame 5-93)	ss lines will endicate the direct	nventually 'for ection of 'haul	m summit hu in both sum	mps and sag mit humps an	d sag humps
· ·		<u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>	_	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
· ·				·	
	1	•	•		\mathcal{F} .
	-				

5 - 78

25. How may the average length of haul be approximated from the mass diagram? (frame 5-113)

1,

LESSON 6

DRAINAGE

CREDIT HOURS	 2	
TEXT ASSIGNMENT	 Attached	Memorandum.

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you should in the following subjects areas, be able to:

- 1. Drainage in site selection Discuss the value of adequate drainage knowing that poor drainage is one of the major causes of road and airfield failure.
- 2. Slopes and ditches for surface drainage Describe the need to properly assign the correct slope to the corresponding requirements and make recommendations of slopes; describe the types of ditches, their characteristics, and uses for proper surface drainage; calculate the number, spacing, and height of check dams when needed.
- 3. Cross drainage Culverts Discuss the purpose of culverts, the practices of using corrugated metal pipe, the use of the log box culverts, and other expedient methods.
- 4. Alinement and size of culverts Discuss the positioning and alining of culverts, the hasty methods of determining the cross sectional areas of culvert requirements, the over design factor, the use of Talbots formula for culvert cross sectional areas, and finally the calculation of number of pipes required.
- 5. Length and cover of culverts Discuss the important considerations of length, the rules for depth, multiple culverts, and pipe cover requirements for airfields.
- 6. Grade and foundation of culvert Support the selection of a grade to be used in culvert construction citing minimum and maximum requirements and discuss the preparations for foundation and fill.
- 7. Subsurface drainage \(^-\)Discuss the purpose of subsurface drainage, considerations of placement, and the two types of subsurface trenches (French and tile).



CONTENTS

	•		ames
Set '1.	Importance of Drainage in Site Selection	6-1	to 6-7
2	Slopes and Ditches for Surface Drainage	6-8	to 6-23
3.	Cross Drainage — Culverts	- 6-24 ·	to 6-31
4.	Alinement and Size of Culverts	6-32	to 6-46
5.	Length and Cover of Culverts	6-47	to 6-53
6.	Grade and Foundations of Culverts	6-54	to 6-59
7.	Subsurface Drainage	.: 6-60	to 6-74

Set 1. Importance of Drainage in Site Selection.

FRAME 6-1.

Poor drainage is a primary cause of road and airfield failure. Practically any soil, when dry, will support a vehicle, but most roads and runways fail when the base course and subgrade become saturated. The primary cause of road and runway failure is ______

(<u>2</u>)	(6-18)	•
FRA	ME 6	19.

According to panel 6.5, the spacing is determined by the formula:

 $S = \frac{100 \text{ H}}{4 - 8}$

Based on panel 6-4/(1) the value for H must be between _____

___ and

feet; (2) the value for B should be between _

and

_ • percent.

(equal) (cross sectional) 6-36)

FRAME 6-37.

In areas where weather conditions are erratic or little known, culvert sizes
may be overdesigned as much as 50 to 100 percent to allow for unusual condi-
tions. To allow for conditions culverts are
from to percent.

(0.5%) (6-54)

FRAME 6-55.

A maximum grade of 2 percent is used when a bottomless or earth floor culvert is employed. This is to prevent scouring or erosion of the bottom. Earth floor or bottomless culverts are built with a maximum grade of _______.

When CMP or a box culvert is employed a maximum grade of _______.

is used.

(poor) (drainage) (6-1)

FRAME 6-2.

Roads that cut straight across the terrain without regard for the natural slopes and stream lines usually require considerable construction—intercepter ditches and cross-drainage facilities. Steep grades normally require extensive erosion-control work on the side ditches. The problem of adequate ______ is one of the most important encountered in the location, design, and construction of roads and airfields.

(1) 1, 3 (2) 2, 2.5 (6-19)

FRAME 6-20.

The height of the checkdam is determined by the formula

$$H = \frac{S (A - B)}{100}$$

If the spacing between two checkdams is 50 feet, a 7% ditch slope can be reduced to a 2% slope on the surface of the water. In this installation, the height of checkdams would be ______ feet, which is within the permissible limits.

(unusual) (overdesigned) (50,100) (6-37) FRAME 6-38.

The selection of pipe culvert sizes depends on the rate of flow of water to be carried, or rate of runoff, and the height of the road above the streambed. Rate of flow is one factor in determining the _______ of pipe culverts. A limiting factor to pipe size would be the ______ of road above the streambed.

(2%) (4%) (6-55)

FRAME 6-56.

In all cases, the outlet end of the culvert should be protected with riprap or sod to prevent ______.

(drainage) (6-2), FRAME 6-3.

The greatest single cause of work stoppages on road and airfield construction projects is wet weather. In the construction sequence, drainage is listed immediately after the clearing and grubbing phase. Drainage must be considered during the early construction phase to minimize work stoppages due to

$$(H = \frac{50 (7-2)}{100}) (= 2.5) (6-20)$$

FRAME 6-21.

To determine the number of checkdams required, divide the length of the ditch by the spacing (panel 6-6). The first checkdam is always located at the bottom of the adverse grade. To reduce the slope of an existing 550-foot ditch from 4 percent to 2 percent with checkdams, each having a 1 foot drop, would require _____ checkdams.



(size) (height) (6-38) FRAME 6-39.

Multiple pipe culverts are used to increase the waterway area without in
creasing the height (size) of the culvert. The use of
culverts is necessary when the road surface is only
a short distance above the streambed or when the natural stream channel is
relatively wide and shallow. Multiple pipes should all be of the same diameter

(scouring) (6-56)

FRAME 6-57.

Culverts are constructed on a firm well-compacted soil foundation, except that box culverts may be placed on suitable rock foundations where such is encountered. The foundation is always shaped to fit, or bed, one-tenth of the diameter of pipe culverts (panel 6-20). A pipe culvert is placed in a well compacted soil foundation _______ to bed _______ of the pipe diameter.

(wet) (weather) (6-3)

FRAME 6-4.

Drainage construction must precede earthwork for two reasons. First, most culverts must be installed in order to allow earthwork operations to progress without interuption; second, fills and cuts must be protected from the effects of rain and overland flow during all phases of construction. Cuts and fills must be ______ from overland flow during all phases of construction.

(11) (see panel 6-6) (6-21)

FRAME 6-22.

The weir notch is the discharge slot at the top of the checkdam. As stated before, it must be big enough to discharge the anticipated runoff. As shown in panel 6-7, the size of the weir notch can be derived from the formula:

 $Q = CLH^{3/2}$

For practical considerations, the depth of flow may be assumed and the length of slot then calculated, or the length of slot may be assumed and the depth of flow then calculated. Note that as a safety factor the slot is always constructed ______ foot deeper than the depth of flow.

(multiple pipe) (6-39)

FRAME 6-40.

In determining the required area of culverts, as previously stated, the culvert area must ______ the cross-sectional area of the upstream ditch (streambed). Required areas of culverts may be calculated by estimating (hasty method) the cross-sectional area of the upstream channel or by applying an approximate method (Talbot's formula).

(shaped) $(\frac{1}{10})$ (6-57)

FRAME 6-58.

(protected) (6-1):

FRAME 6-5.

In fill operations, the sides (slopes) of the embankment must be protected' from erosion and the embankment itself should be crowned and backbladed smoothed off whenever it is to be left for any length of time or a storm is iminent. In fills, the _______ of the embankment must be protected from erosion.

 $(0.5 \text{ or } \frac{1}{2})$ (6-22)

FRAME 6-23.

If the flow in a ditch is found to be 5 cubic feet per second and assuming L = 2 feet, the weir notch should be ______ feet deep,

(equal) (6-40) FRAME 6-41. The quickest hasty method of determining the size of waterway is by the reconnaissance method. Three simple measurements of an existing streambed will give the _____ ___ area. To this is added a 100 percent safety factor. The culvert is designed with a waterway equal to the area of the channel (ditch or streambed) plus the safety factor. (hand) $(\frac{1}{2}D$ (diameter)) (6-58) FRAME 6-59. Placement of drum culverts should be done with care. A cradle of wood or

(slopes) (sides) (6-5)

FRAME 6-6.

In cutting operations, the center of the cut should be kept high to facilitate runoff. There must always be some type of side ditch, cut to drain along the sides of a working cut. During construction, the ______ of a cut should be kept _____ and a _____ ditch should be provided.

Set 3. Cross Drainage - Culverts,

(1.4 ft) (6-23)

FRAME 6-24.

Whenever natural drainage channels cannot be diverted economically from roads, taxiways, and occassionally runways, facilities must be provided to permit cross-drainage to flow under them. Culverts are used for this purpose. They provide cross-drainage at low points in a fill, provide ditch relief, and continue side ditches at intersections. Their ease of construction makes them more desirable than small bridges under many conditions. When water has to be drained across the line of a road or taxiway _______ are usually built._

(cross sectional) (100%) (6-41)

FRAME 6-42.

Set 7. Subsurface Drainage.

(foundation) (half) (6-59)

FRAMÉ 6-60.

When rain falls on the surface of the earth, a portion percolates or infiltrates into the earth. This accumulates in voids in the soil or rock beneath the surface and becomes what is called ground water. The surface of this layer of water which roughly parallels the surface of the earth, is called the water table. The water table is generally close to the surface in valleys and well below the surface on the hills or ridges. If the water table level is higher than permitted by construction requirements, it is lowered by subsurface drainage. The object of

by tapping the ground water and carrying it off in a pipe or ditch.

(center) (high) (side) (6-6)

The first step in the design of drainage facilities for roads or airfields is to locate those areas that might contribute surface or subsurface flow to the site. The second and most important step is to locate all the existing water courses that can be used to carry this flow from the site. In the design of road or airfield drainage facilities, the most important step is to locate existing _______ that may be used to carry the ______ away from the site.

(culverts) (6-24)

FRAME 6-25

Most pipes used for enlyert construction are made of either telriforced concrete, cast iron, or corrugated galvantzed metal. Pre-formed corrugated metal pipe (CMP) is the easiest to place. CMP is produced in standard sizes ranging from 8 to 84 inches in diameter; nestable CMP (flanged half sections, bolted together in the field) commonly range from 12 to 48 inch diameter in 6 inch increments, but sizes of 60 and 72 inch diameter are also supplied in the theater of operations. Beentise it is easier to place, desiable _______ is the most common item found in supply overseas.

(1) $\frac{\mathbf{W}_1 + \mathbf{W}_2}{2} \times \mathbf{H}$ (2) 32 (6-42)

FRAME 6-43.

Another hasty method of estimating the waterway or culvert area is to question local inhabitants about climatic conditions and location of high water mark when the stream is in flood. The size of the channel is then ______ on the basis of the reported flow, topography of the watershed, and the appearance of the channel. A ______ safety factor is added the same as in application of the reconnaissance method.

(subsurface drainage) (water table) (6-60)

FRAME 6-61.

In road or airfield construction the water table should be a minimum of 5 feet below the facility. A site which requires extensive ______ should first be weighed against two alternatives—relocation of the facility to higher ground or the use of fill to raise the facility to the proper height above the ______

Set 2. Slopes and Ditches for Surface Drainage.

(water) (courses) (flow) (6-7)

FRAME 6-8.

Standing water on road, runway, and parking-area surfaces not only decreases operating efficiency but will eventually saturate the subgrade, causing failure. Sheet flow (moving water) that is too deep or moving too fast will erode the surface over which it moves. Surfaces are built with gentle slopes designed to remove ______ water and control ______ flow with minimum damage to surfaces and subgrades.

(CMP) (6-25)

FRAME 6-26.

When pipe culverts are NOT readily available, box culverts can be used. They are constructed with a square or rectangular cross section and may be built with logs, sized timber, or dimensioned lumber. Box culverts must be designed to prevent side as well as roof collapse. ______ culverts may be used in lieu of pipe culverts but must be designed to prevent both _____ and ____ collapse.

(estimated) (100%) (6-43)

-

FRAME 6-44.

Talbot's formula (panel 6-13) may be used as an approximate method of computing the cross-sectional area of a culvert. Note that the accuracy of the formula is dependent on the selection of the _______.

To simplify the use of Talbot's formula, a nomograph (panel 6-14) is used to determine the required waterway after the value of C has been estimated. In the given example, the required area of culvert is ______ square feet. This is the correct value to be used and no safety factor need be added.

(subsurface drainage) (water table) (6-61)

FRAME 6-62.

In many cases when a high water table is encountered, the problem may be solved by relocating the road or airfield in different terrain, if possible, preferably on the _______. It may prove the cheapest as well as quickest solution. If possible, the _______ of a road or airfield may be the simplest solution to a water table problem.

(standing or surface) (sheet) (6-8) FRAME 6-9.

The steepness of the slope or crown required to remove surface water depends
on the impermeability of the surface material. Concrete and asphalt surfaces,
for example, require less slope than gravel or earth surfaces because water does
not penetrate them as readily. Panel 6-1 shows recommended cross slopes for
roads and runways. Note that earth and gravel surfaces require a transverse
slope of to inch per foot, while paved surfaces
require only to inch per foot.

(box) (side)	(roof)	(6-26)
FRAME 6-27		4

Log box culverts can be made in several ways. Based on panel 6-8—which shows the best method of construction: (1) the side logs run along the of the culvert with the logs which form the top and bottom laid at ______ angles to them; (2) _____ and _____ are placed inside the culvert to provide stability; (3) when low bearing soil is encountered, _____ and ______

must be used.

(coefficient C) (42) (6-44) FRAME 6-45.

After the required design area of culvert is known, a box culvert can be designed accordingly. In the design of pipe culverts, the size and number of _____ can be found by referring to panel 6-15. For example, the waterway area of an 8-inch pipe is 0.35 square feet. The waterway area of an 18-inch pipe is _____ square feet.

(ridges) (relocation) (6-62)

FRAME, 6-63.

Another method of obtaining a dry subgrade is to raise the roadbed or run-way above the water table. This method may sometimes be very costly in time and material. However, if fill material is plentiful, it may well be the most feasible solution. A roadbed should be located at least ______ feet above the water table.

 $(\frac{1}{2})(\frac{3}{4})(\frac{1}{4})(\frac{1}{2})(\frac{6-97}{2})$

FRAME 6-10.

In addition to the transverse slopes shown in panel 6-1, a minimum longitudinal grade is normally established for roads and runways. This grade naturally corresponds to the grade of the longitudinal ditch to obtain balanced removal of water. For military roads, no longitudinal grade is required for fill sections; a 0.5% minimum is usually adequate for cut sections. Proper removal of surface water requires that surfaces be sloped both laterally and _______.

(1) length, right (2) stakes, spreaders (3) sleepers, stringers (6-27) FRAME 6-28.

Panel 6-9 shows an alternate method of constructing log culverts. This is an excellent method but takes considerable time to build. Note, in contrast to the standard log culvert; the side logs are placed _______ to the flow line and fit into ______ in the logs forming the top and bottom.

(pipes) (1.77) (6-45)

FRAME 6-46.

In most cases, the selection of pipe is limited to standard sizes (panel 6-15). To find the number of pipes required for a culvert, take the required waterway area and divide it by the waterway area of the pipe selected. Ditch or channel area divided by _____ area gives the number of pipes needed.

(5) (6-63)

FRAME 6-64.

To intercept the ground water, drains must be located on the upstream side of the project and must extend down below the water table. Subsurface drains are located ______ from the project and at a level _____ the water table.

(longitudinally) (6-10)

Ditches are normally used to intercept surface runoff and carry it to a convenient disposal area. Those shown in panel 6-2 are quickly constructed with a motorized grader. The trapezoidal ditch requires a more skillful reperator, but can be built with varying base width to carry greater volumes of water, when required. It is always used in sandy or other soil that erodes easily. For ease of construction, however, the ______ ditch is normally used.

(perpendicular) (notches) (6-28)

FRAME 6-29.

Another type of _____ culvert is one built with sized timber or dimensional lumber. This is constructed either with outside bracing or collars or with internal bracing. Internal bracing will reduce the water capacity but should be used whenever possible because it provides more strength and rigidity than outside bracing. _____ bracing is preferred to _____ bracing in the construction of box culverts built with sized timber or dimensional lumber.

Set 5. Length and Cover of Culverts.

(pipe) (6-46)

FRAME 6-47.

The length of culvert (box or pipe) is an important consideration. Culverts must be long enough to extend completely through fills to the point where the fill slope meets the ground or streambed (panel 6-16). Culverts must be to prevent earth from being washed into them from the fill and also to prevent the embankment from being scoured by the water as it leaves the culvert.

(upstream) (below) 1 (6-64)

FRAME 6-65.

Where springs are encountered they should be capped and the water carried off in a pipe. The object of subsurface drainage in this case is to ______ the water table by intercepting the _____

13.

("V") (6-11)

FRAME 6-12.

Both sides of a ditch need not have the same slope. However, if a deep "V" ditch 2 feet deep is built with maximum slope of both sides, the ditch will be feet wide.

(box) (internal) (outside) (6-29)

FRAME 6-30.

Although the resulting structures are not as strong as CMP or box culverts, expedient drainage structures can be built using steel (oil, gasoline, or asphalt) drums. Steel ______ are useful ______ for forming drainage structures.

(long enough) (6-47)			·	6.2
FRAME 6-48.		• '		1
To minimize	at the	downstream	n e nd cul v e	erts should
be 1 or 2 feet longer than other				
discharge end (panel 6-17). If h	readwalls are	constructed	at the disc	harge end
the of culv				
time, labor, and materials to bu	ild longer cu	lverts.	3 26	tunes less
		8		•
		3	1 -	
			•••	
		` ```		√
	,		• •	, .
	•	· ,	•	
		,	1	
	111	. b.	。人。 - 5	•
				٠
		•	• `• . •	
		- °	•	,
	, ·		t ,	100
(lower) (ground water) (6-65)	• •	> .	,	,
FRAME '6-66.	:		<i>j</i>	• .

Subsurface drainage may sometimes be accomplished by the use of deep open (V) ditches. These ditches are easily built, are readily enlarged, and provide positive interception of subsurface water before it reaches the area being protected. Deep _______ serve the purpose of ______ ground water.

(4) (6-12)

FRAME 6-13.

Side slopes in ditches adjoining runways require special consideration. More serious accidents may be avoided if aircraft missing the runway can roll through ditches without overturning or damaging landing gear. Panel 6-3 shows a typical side ditch for a military airfield. Note that this ______ ditch limits the depth of flow to a maximum of ______ inches.

(drums) (expedients) (6-30)

FRAME 6-31.

In preparing steel drums for constructing expedient drainage structures, the
pneumatic metal drum opener does an excellent job in removing drum heads.
After the ends are removed, a continuous pipe is formed by tack welding or
wiring the drums together. Expedient drainage structures are built by tack
or steel drums together to form a
continuous pipe.

(scouring), (length) (6-48)			• /	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
FRAME 649.		ر در		
It military conscripcito	n II is desiral	le to	.01	ulverts
reyond fills rather than bu	ild extensive in	ilet and outlet fa	cilities. In so	me in-
siances, scouring carr be		by-constru	icting a toe di	tch to
carry inc water off the em	bankment (fill	slope)	م سده المستورية م سده المستورية المراوانية	و خند و ا
			and the state of t	ر بار المار ا
		Maria Caracteria Carac		
		,		
			121	_

f (open or V ditches) (intercepting) (6-66)

FRAME 6-67.

- ţ

Deep open ditches are not usually constructed in long stretches but are more commonly employed in short stretches at critical points. However, in many cases, such ditches are a traffic hazard and they are also subject to erosion. Deep open ditches are usually used only on of a project where the water table does not have to be lowered over a substantial portion of the project.

(shallow) (V) (3) (6-13)

PRAME 6-14:

Set 4. Alinement and Size of Culverts

(welding) (wiring) (6-31)

FRAME 6-32.

In placing culverts, an effort should be made to continue the original direction of flow of the water. A change in direction of stream flow at the upper end of the culvert is objectionable primarily because it may result in erosion of the sides of the channel around the entrance. When positioning a culvert, the of flow should be continued in its original direction, if possible.

(extend) (prevented) (6-49) FRAME 6-50.

In order to prevent the collapse of the culvert under traffic loads, it should
have adequate earth cover (panel 6-18). Pipe culverts under military roads
should have at least (1) inches of cover for sizes smaller
than 24 inches in diameter, (2) the diameter for larger
sizes. The preferred cover for a box culvert is (3)
and cover for a drum culvert should be not less than (4)
inches.

(short) (stretches) (6-67)

FRAME 6-68.

(deep V) (trapezoidal) (shallow V) (6-14) FRAME 6-15.

Longitudinal (side) ditches alongside a road or runway are referred to as collection ditches. Diversion ditches move the water from collection ditches to disposal areas. Where a relatively large area drains toward a facility, interceptor ditches are needed to prevent erosion or actual flooding of the facility. Classified according to their function there are three types of ditches: _______, and _______,

(direction) (6-32)

FRAME 6-33.

Culverts are alined in various ways, depending on the terrain and the stream channel. When possible, place culverts at right angles to the centerline of the road or taxiway. Placing culverts at ______ to the centerline is particularly advisable on steep mountain streams or streams with high approach velocities.



(1) $12 (2)^{-1} (3) 18 (4) 36 (6-50)$

FRAME 6-51.

Whe	n placing	a 'pipe	ونر	⊢a fill,	conside	ration i	must l	be give	n to	the
maxımur	n size pipe	allowab	ole in the	fill so ti	nat the r	minimur	n cove	r is ma	antar	ned.
As show	n in pane	l 6-18	(1) the	formula	for cal	lculating	g max	ımum	size	pipe
allowable	e is		: (2	the m	ınımum	cover f	or the	given	exan	nple
should b	e		inches	5.						

(subsurface) (drains) (open) (ditches) (6-68)

FRAME 6-69.

The two types of subsurface drains normally used are the French or blind drain and the tile drain. The two types of subsurface drains to remember are the blind or _____ drain and _____ drain.

(collection) (diversion) (interceptor) (6-15)
FRAME 6-16.

A minimum slope of 0.5% is necessary to make ditches self-cleaning; the maximum desirable slope is set at about 4%. When the slope becomes greater than the desired maximum, the ditch must be lined with reprap, sodded, or paved. Normally, the difference in elevation per 100 feet of ditch should be not more than _______ feet.

(right angles) (6-33)

FRAME 8-34.

If a meandering stream is encountered, the culvert should be installed at the best possible location and the stream channel straightened as necessary (panel 6-10). Some construction such as building ______ and digging ______ for shorting the stream to proper alinement may be required.

 $(\mathbf{D}_{min}) = 2 \ 3 \ \mathbf{F} (24) (6-51)$

FRAMÉ 6-52.

If multiple culverts are used, they should be spaced a distance of one half the diameter apart. This is done to provide space for tamping a back fill as well as preventing the culverts from crushing each other from the sides. If 2 culverts of 40-inch diameter are used they should be spaced inches apart.

(French) (tile) (6-69)

FRAME 6-70.

Blind or French drains are constructed by filling a ditch or trench with stone or crushed rock (panel 6-21). The top of the trench is then covered with a well compacted soil forming an impervious seal to exclude surface water. The drain is filled with ______ rocks near the bottom and ______ ones near the top.

(4) (6-16)

FRAME 6-17.

On sidehill cuts and steep grades, checkdams are placed in	side ditches to
reduce the rate-of-flow (slow the water) and prevent erosion.	They are built
of timber, sandbags, concrete, rock, or other similar materials.	Checkdams are
built to reduce the	
and prevent in side ditches.	•

(dams) (new channels) (6-34)

FRAME 6-35.

On sidehill roads or wherever roads intercept surface water, either in cut or fill, the water is drained to the low side of the road, and, if possible, away from the road by ditch-relief culverts (panel 6-11). Ditch-relief culverts should be installed at an angle of _________ to the centerline, to allow a more direct entrance of water into the culvert. On 5-percent grades, ditch-relief culverts should be placed about ________ feet apart; on 8-percent grades, _______ feet apart.

(20) (6-52)

FRAME 6-53.

Minimum cover for culverts on airfields can be found in panel 6-19. A CMP culvert of 14 gage and 12 inches in diameter designed to carry an 80,000 pound plane, should have at least ______ feet of cover.

(French) (large) (small) (6-70)

FRAME 6-71.

In the French drain, the ground water enters the trench from the sides and percolates through the large stone at the bottom of the trench until it reaches a point where it can be dumped into a diversion ditch. Water enters the French drain through the ______ of the trench; the top of the drain is ______ to exclude ______ water.



(rate-of-flow) (erosion) (6-17)

FRAME 6-18.

Side slopes of the ditch immediately above and below checkdams (panel 6-4) require protection from erosion and scouring. To accomplish this, a weir notch big enough to discharge the anticipated runoff is cut in the middle of the checkdam to prevent backed-up water from cutting at the edges of the checkdam. An apron, extending from the downstream face of the checkdam, is needed to prevent scouring. Checkdams must extend at least ________ feet into the sides and bottom of the ditch.

Turn back to bottom of page 6-3.

(60°) (500,300) (6-35)

FRAME 6-36.

Size is a major consideration in culvert construction. The cross-sectional area of culverts should be at least equal to that of upstream ditches or stream channels. The minimum area of culvert is at least ______ to the _____ area of upstream ditches.

Turn back to top of page 6.4.



Set 6. Grade and Foundation of Culverts.

(1.5), (6-53)

FRAME 6-54.

Normally, culverts are placed on the same grade (slope) as the natural and artificial drainage channels which discharge into them. To prevent the accumulation of sediment in pipes, it is generally desirable to use grades from 2 to 4 percent; in extreme cases, where the fall of the terrain requires it. 0.5 percent grade may be used as the absolute minimum. Adequate flow to prevent silt settling in pipe culverts requires a ______ minimum grade.

Turn back to bottom of page 6-4.

(sides) (sealed) (surface) (6-71)

FRAME 6-72.

A tile drain is the same as the French drain except that the trench may be filled with gravel in lieu of crushed stone and a pipe is placed near the bottom (panel 6-21). The pipe is usually 6 inches in diameter although 8- and 10-inches pipes are also used. The tile drain differs from the French drain in that a ______ is employed to carry the excess water away.

(pipe) (6-72)

FRAME 6-73.

The most common form of subsurface piping is perforated pipe. In cases where the perforations do not extend completely around the circumference of the pipe, the pipe is generally laid with the holes down and with the joints closed. Semiperforated pipe is always laid with the holes _______ and the joints are _______

(down) (closed) (6-73)

FRAME 6-74.

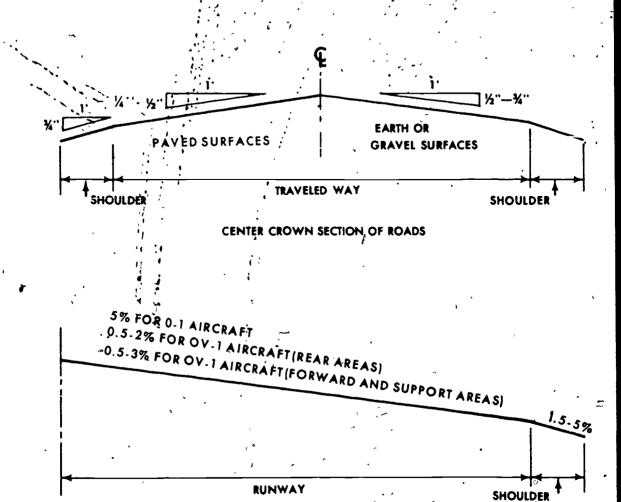
Corrugated metal, vitrified clay, and nonreinforced concrete pipe may also be used for subsurface piping. Such pipe is laid with open joints, or the top half may be sealed with 12-inch to 11-inch openings on the bottom. The minimum grade for all subsurface piping is 0.3 percent. Either pipe or pipes laid with ______ may be used in a tile drain.

(perforated) (open joints) (6-74)

END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW

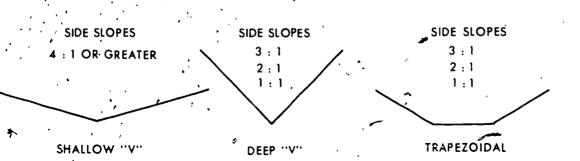
¥

Panel 6-1. Military Road and Airfield Cross Slopes.

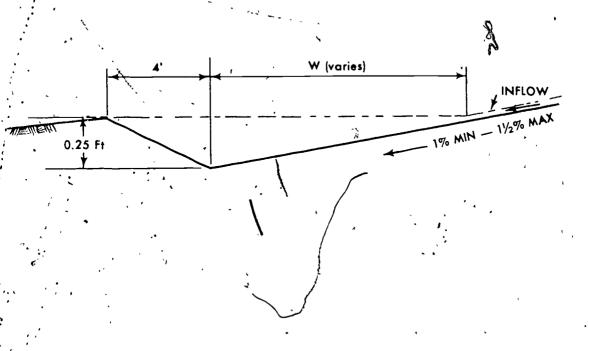


CENTER CROWN SECTION OF AIRFIELDS

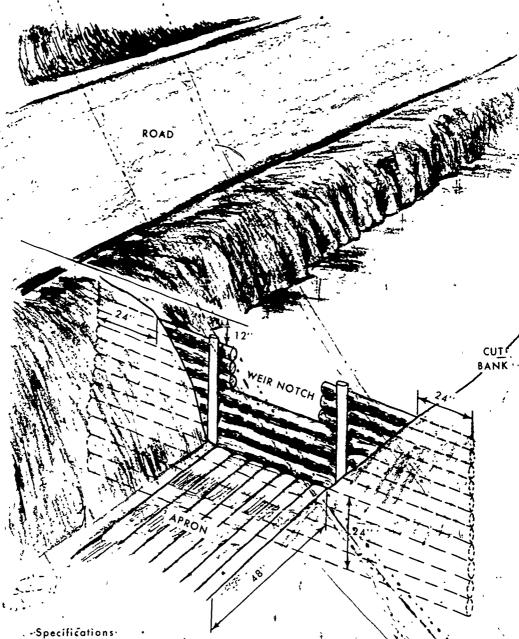
Panel 6-2. Typical Ditch Cross Sections.



Panel 6-3. Typical Shallow "V" Ditch (Unequal Sides) for Military Airfields.



Panel 6-4. Timber Checkdam.



Extend into sides and bottom at least 24 inchies . Ditch bank must extend 12 inches or more above top Aprons should extend downstream approx 3 feet / ft of drop

(measured from bottom of weir) Effective height must be between 12 and 36 inches

Weir notch — Q = $3LH\frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2}H$



Panel 6-5. Checkdam Spacing.

The ideal slope of water surface is 40 or 50 to 1.

Spacing of checkdams to achieve this objective is determined by the formulo:

$$S = \frac{100 \text{ H}}{A - B}$$

Where :

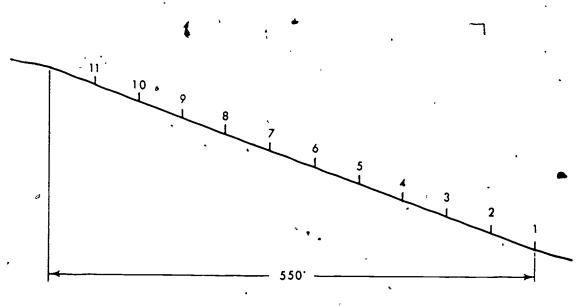
H = height of checkdam in feet (ditch bottom to bottom of weir notch)

A = percent slope of existing ditch

B = percent slope of desired water surface



Panel 6-6. Method of Determining Number of Checkdams Required.



Salution frame 6-21:

$$S = \frac{100 \times 1}{4 - 2} = \frac{100}{2} = 50 \text{ ft}$$

$$N = \frac{550}{50} = 11$$

Proof:

Difference in elevation = $550 \times .04 = 22$ ft, total drop

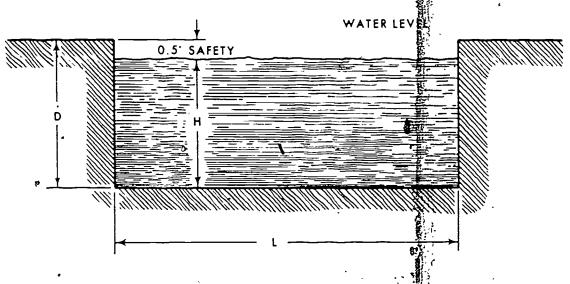
The 11 checkdams will take up 11 ft

Then:
$$22 - 11 = 11$$
 ft , and

$$\frac{11}{550}$$
 × 100 = 2%, final effective slope of water surface.



Panel 6-7. Size of Weir Notch



Size of slot may be derived from the formula:

Where:

Q = peak rate of runoff through ditch in dis

C = 3 (constant)

L = length, of notch in feet

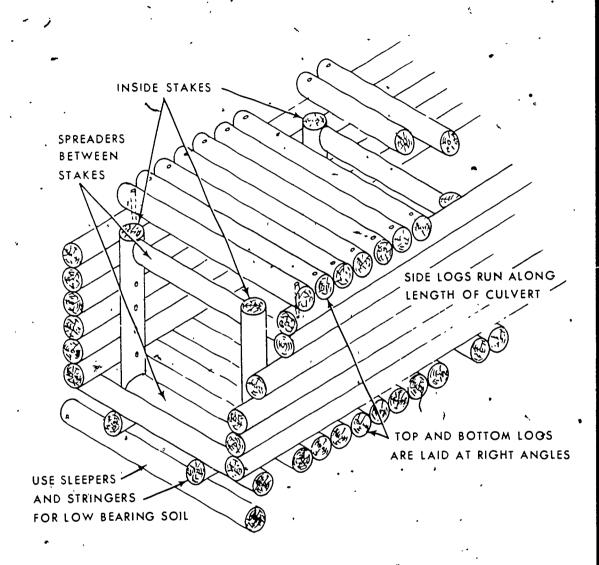
H = depth of flow through notch in feet.

Then:

$$L = \frac{Q}{CH^{\frac{3}{2}}}$$
 and

$$\Rightarrow H = \begin{bmatrix} Q \\ CI \end{bmatrix}^{\frac{2}{3}}$$

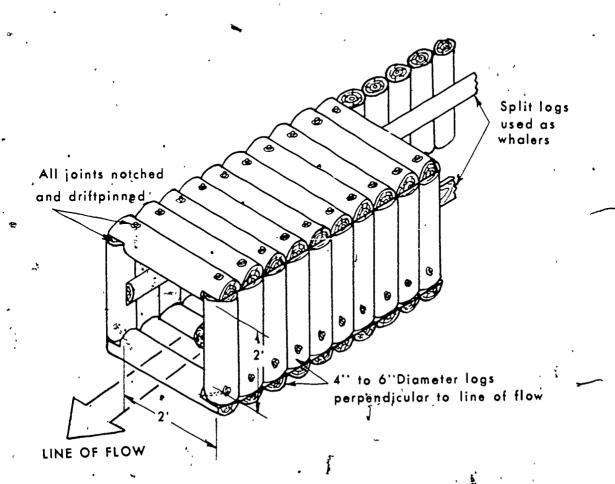
Panel 6-8. Standard Log Box Culvert.



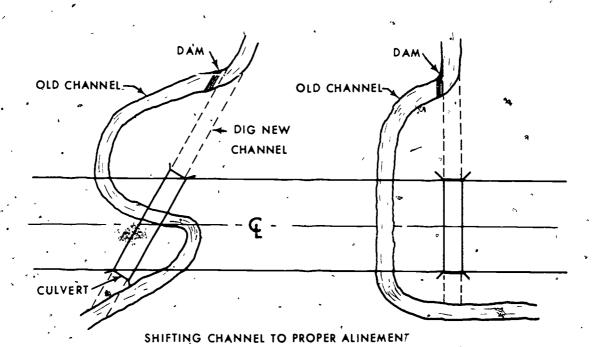


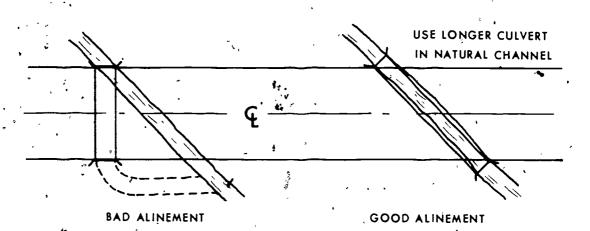


Panel 6-9. Alternate Log Box Culvert.

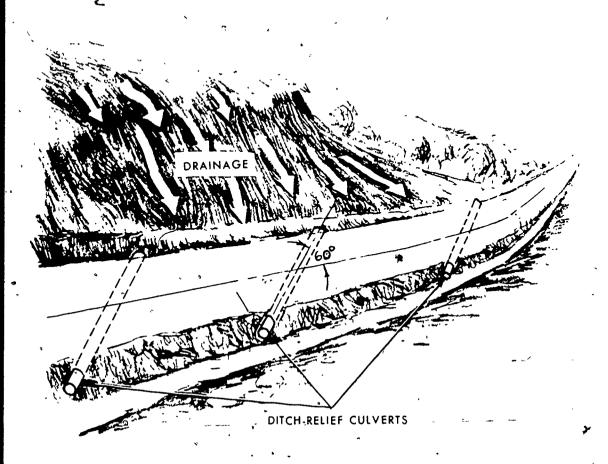


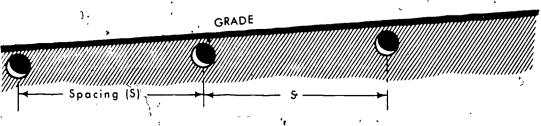
Panel 6-10. Alinement of Eulverts.





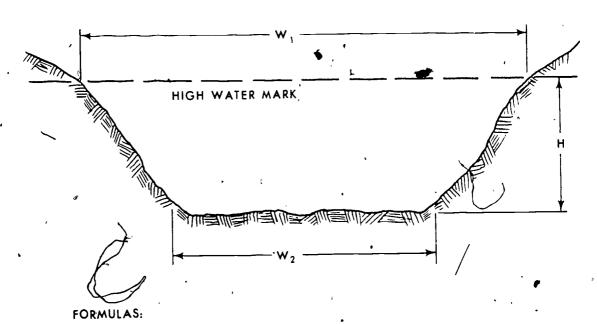
Panel 6-11. Ditch-Relief Culverts.





FOR: 5% grades S = about 500 feet

Panel 6-12. Typical Stream Cross Section.



Area of channel =
$$\frac{W_1 + W_2}{2} \times H$$

A (design area of culvert) =
$$\frac{W_1 + W_2}{2} \times H + 100\%$$
 (safety factor)

Where:

 $W_{1,\pm}$ width of channel at the high water mark

 W_2 = width of channel at the bottom of the streambed

 H = vertical distance in feet from the bottom of the streambed to the high water mark

Example:

Given
$$W_1 = .5'$$

$$W_2 = 3'$$

Find design area of culvert:

$$A = \frac{5 + 3}{2} \times 4 + 100\%$$

$$= 4 \times 4 + 100\% =$$
 sq ft

Panel 6-13. Talbot's Formula.

Talbot's formula states that the design area for culverts is equal to the fourth root of the cube of the drainage area in acres, multiplied by a coefficient of runoff or:

$$A - C \sqrt{D}$$

In which.

- A = area of waterway opening in square feet.
- C⁸ a coefficient that depends upon the slope, shape, and general character of the area to be drained.
- D drainage area in acres.

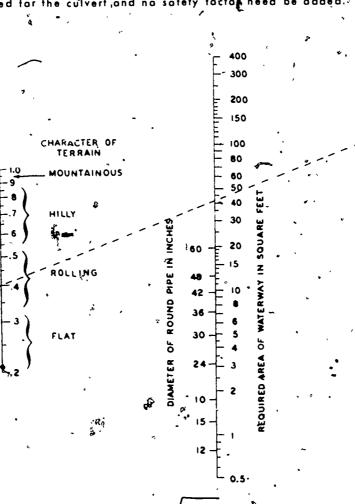
The value of the coefficient C is influenced by the shape of the drainage area, the side slopes and the length of the valleys, and by the general character and culture of the ground. All of these factors affect the rate of runoff. Therefore the engineer must adjust the value of C to suit each case. The value of C should be increased as the lengths of valleys decrease in proportion to their widths, and vice versa. As side slopes steepen, C should be increased. Heavy scrub-growth would decrease the value of C as compared with cultivated farm land, whereas rock or barren slopes would increase the value of C. A value of 1.0 is satisfactory for moderately mountainous terrain, or for reasonably steep barren areas with abrupt slopes up to 10 percent. Normal values for C are as follows:

- C. 0.2 for flat areas not affected by accumulated snow and where the length of valley drained is several times the width.
- C 0.35 for gently rolling farm land where the length of valley is about 3 or 4 times the width.
- C = 0.7 for rough hilly area having moderate slopes.
- C 1.0 for steep, barren areas having abrupt slopes, and for moderately mountainous areas.



Panel 6-14. Talbot's Formula Nomograph.

By placing a straightedge across the namagraph with its ends correcting the estimated value for C and the proper drainage area in acres, the required asea of waterway in square feet can be read directly. This is the correct area required for the cultvert and no safety factor need be added:



A = AREA OF CULVERT OPENING IN SQUARE FEET

C = COEFFICIENT DEPENDING ON CHARACTER OF TERRAIN

A ="C 4/

D = DRAINAGE AREA IN ACRES

RUNOFF, COEFFICIENT

EXAMPLE - THE AREA OF CULVERT FOR A DRAINAGE AREA OF 500 ACRES IN GENTLY ROLLING TERRAIN (COEFFICIENT "C"=0.4)

IS 42 SQUARE FEET (SEE DASHED LINE, ABOVE)

6 - 54

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

374

5,000 4,000

3,000

2.000

1,500

1,000

900 800

700 600

500

400

300

200

150

100

80

70

60 ∲50

40

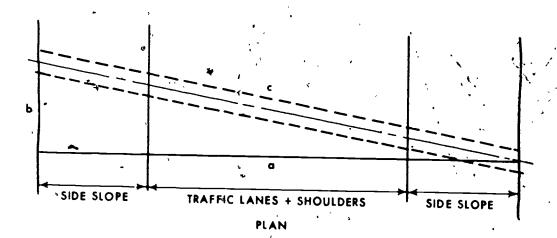
30

12

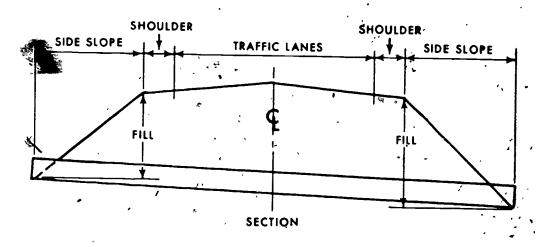
Panel 6-15. Pipe Sizes and End Area.

	\ \
n. h. takan	Waterway
Diameter in inches	(sg-ft)
8	0.35
10	0.55
12. ' , ',	0.79
. 15	1.23
18	1.77
21	·2.41·
241	3.14
30	.4.91
36	7.07
42	9.62
. 48	· 12.57
54	15.90
60	19.64
66	23.76
72	28.27
78	33.18
84	38.49

Panel 6-16. Culvert Length:



[1] Diagram for culvert placed @ angle less than 90° to centerline of road. Length of culvert (c) may be measured; or solve for (a) as in-diagram (2) below, measure line (b): then, $c = \sqrt{\alpha^2 + b^2}$



(2) Diagram for culvert placed @ 90° perpendicular to centerline of road.

Minimum length of culvert = traffic lanes + shoulders + horizontal side stope distances (@ 90° perpendicular to)

Find length of culvert w/headwalls .

Shoulders =
$$2 \times 4 = 8$$
 ft (Panel 1 — 2)
Slopes = $(2x6) + (2x6) = 24$ ft

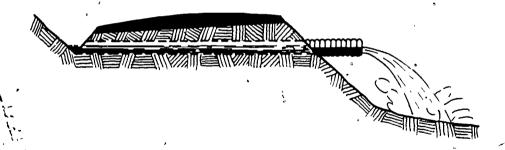
$$23 + 8 + 24 = 55 \text{ ft}$$

Add 2 ft, if wingwalls are not used.

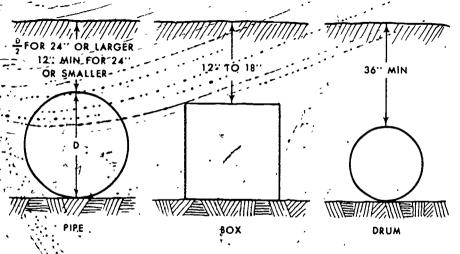
$$6 - 56$$



Panel 6-17. Culvert Extended Beyond Fill to Prevent Scouring.



Panel 6-18. Culvert Cover Requirements.



FOR PIPE CULVERTS-

Maximum size pipe allowable is based on the formula,

$$D_{max} = \frac{2}{3} F(fill depth in inches)$$

Given: F = 6.25 feet ',

Find: Maximum allowable size pipe and minimum cover

$$D = \frac{2}{3}F = \frac{2}{3}(6.25 \times 12) = 50$$
 inches

Use 48-inch pipe*

Cover =
$$\frac{D}{2} = \frac{48}{2} = \dots$$
 inch minimum

If calculations for D (the diameter) give a nonstandard size pipe, drop back to the hext smaller standard size pipe (panel 6---15).

Never go above the maximum allowable pipe size.

ERIC Full Text Provided by ERIC

Panel 6.19. Pipe Cover Requirements for Airfields.

PIPE COVER REQUIREMENTS FOR AIRFIELDS (IN FEET)

(Dota Prepared by the U.S. Engineers, Office of the Chief, of Engineers)

			l								I					ı		ľ				ĺ	
TYPE OF PIPE		30	000	30,000 LB PLANE	ANE			80.0	80,000 LB PLANE	1 B	ANE E			120,0	120,000 LB PLANE	PLA	Ä	-	30	300,000 LB PLANE	81 (PLAN	, w
(Pipe Diametes in Inches)	9	- 12	24	36	48	09	9	12	24	36	48	09	9	12,	24 3	36	48	09	۱ و	12 24	1 36	.48	09
Clay Sewer Pipe	1.5	30	30	3.5			30						0.4					 ^	2.0	-	<u> </u>	_	
Clay Culvert Pipe (AASHO)	•	-5	- 5	20				30	3.5	3.5				3.5	4.5	4.5		 	\vdash	\vdash	_	\vdash	<u> </u>
Concrete Sewer Pipe	2.	25	e				စ္တ	0,					0			\vdash	-	Ļ	00	-	├-	\vdash	
Reinförced Concrete Sewer Pipe		20	30	3.5	0,4	0.4		3.5					\vdash	4.5		-	-	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	\vdash	-	Ĺ
Reinforced Concrete Culvert Pipe		1.5	20	20	20	20		2.5	30	3.5	3.5	3.5		3.0	0,	4.5	-	-		40 60	70	00	óoı
Reinforced Cancrate Culvert Pipe (Extra Strength)		ď	0.	0.	01	10			2.5	2.5	2.5	2.5			30	32/	35,	35	-	4.0 5.0	00	00	7.0
Corrugated Metal Pipe-18 Gage	10		L				13	20					20	\vdash		\vdash	\vdash	 	30	-	┡	L	L
Corruga'ed Metal Pipe-16 Gage		1.0	1 3				10	2.0	30				1.5	2.5	0.4	-	-	Ë	20 30	0 9 0	_	_	
Corrugated Metal Pipe-14 Gage			0.	20	Ŀ			1.5	2.5	3.5				20	30	0			7	5 50	0 7 0		_
Corrugated Metal Pipe-12 Gage				01	2.0			ь	1.5	2.5	3.5	Н	Н	1.5	2.5 3	35	40	\vdash	\vdash	°	00	7.0	L
Corrugated Metal Pipe-10 Gage					10	1.5				20	2.5	3.0		H	20	30	3.5	07		3.5	5.5	6 5	7 0
Carrugated Metal Pipe—8 Gage						1.0					20	25	•		H	25	30	3.5	$\vdash\dashv$	30	5.0	09	6.5
											,			l	H	H	H					Ħ	

established by ASTM standards. When proof of extra strength is submitted the minimum cover may be voried accordingly Pipe to conform to ASTM Specifications except as noted. Pipe produced by certain manufacturers exceeds strength

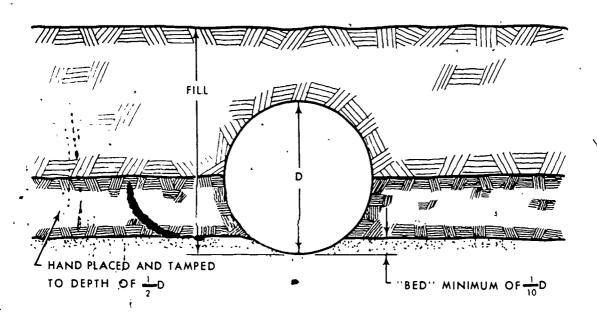
Cover for pipes within landing or taxiway strips ar similar traffic areas shall be provided in accordance with above table except as provided for rigid pavements in Note 3 below.

op to and including 120,000 lbs and 2.0 feet for 300,000 lb plane toads, except that minimum cover below thickened edges may Pipe placed under concrete airfield povements shall have a minimum cover measured below the slob of 10 foot for plane loads be reduced to 0.5 foot for 120,000 lb plane toods, or less, and to 1.0 foot for 300,000 lb plane loads,

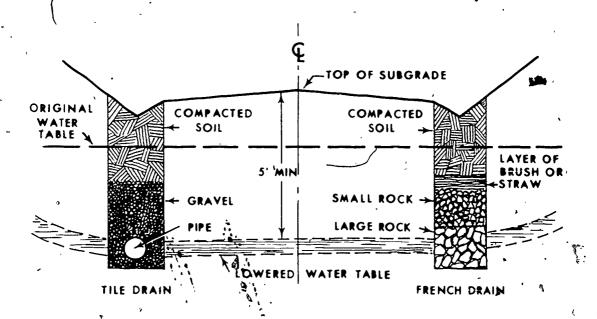
5 – 58

33

Panel 6-20. Culvern Foundation.



Panel 6-21. Subsurface Drains.



LESSON 6

SELF TEST

questio	llowing exercises on on refer to a fram- on. Write your answ	e or panel con	taining informatio	on related to the
finished those g	d answering all the criven for this lesson as to these review	questions for this in the back of	s lesson, compare	your answers with
1. Wher sequence? Wh	n is drainage const y? (frame 6-4)	ruction begun	with reference to	the construction
	·	v		
	,			
9 What	t are the maximum	and minimize	alana	
surfaces design	t are the maximum ned with gentle slo	pes? (frames 6-	8, 6-16)	ded and wny are
	7 1	. 1		
	a			
	,		1	
3. The drainage ditche 6-14)	motorized grader caes. Give the three t	in be used to copyes and tell wh	onstruct any of that they are best s	he three types of suited for. (frame
0-14/	•			• ,
•		•		
			· · · · ·	` ,
4. Give scouring is pro	the purpose of checovided around chec	ekdams and tell kdams. (frame	how protection ag 6-17, 6-18)	gainst erosion and
,				,
	-		2	



5. Given the following in	iformation on a checkd	lam being built:
H is equal to min	imum value allowed	% 0
B is equal to min	imum value allowed	
A is equal to 7%		, 1
·	-	
	dams according to the	formula for spacing (frame 6-19
and panels 6-4, 6-5)		Sales Sales
•	•	· •
•		
_		<u> </u>
		*
6. Determint the number cent to 2 percent. Each drop		d in a 600 foot ditch from 4 per- 6-21, panel 6-6)
,		
		مهم. منافق
	,	**************************************
		6- 24)
7. Describe the purpose	of a culvert. (frame (6-24)
	<u> </u>	
		<u> </u>
•		2
8. Support your choice struct. (frame 6-25)	of the following culver	ts as being the easiest to con-
a. log-box	c. oil drun	n
b. timber-box	d. CMP	•
2	, .	٠ ،
<u> </u>		·
	•	
		· · //
	•	
9. What material is idea	al for use for expedien	t culverts? frame 6-30)
1	•	•
		12.
•		
		7 1
4		
· ·		,

direction	Although of flow is for a mea	f possible,	what me	thod sho	uld be er	is to continuity is to continuity in the continuity of the continu	nue the providin	original g cross
			(1		, , , ,			
		٧						<i>J</i>
•	_					-		
	What sho (frame 6-3		spacing, i	in feet, o	f ditch-rel	ief culverts	on an 8-	percent
						`		
						•	•	
					<u> </u>			→
of a culve bottom o	ert which l	nas a chanr m bed, and	nel width o I the dista	of 8 feet a	it the high	be the desing water man nel bed to h	k, 6 feet	t at the
							-	_
				*			-	
	•			•			•	
land, wha		of pipe (in	ches) sho	uld be us	ed? Use 7	acres of gen Calbot's form		
•	-	•						
ý				•			4	
14. diameter	If a culve pipes wou	rt requires	s a design	area of ame 6.46	25 squar and pane	e feet, how l 6-15)	many	48-inch-
					•			



		•	ঞ			
*	9		•		•	
16. What is the rage, 24 inches in dianel 6-19)						
		<u> </u>				
17. To what dulvert be well tam				a 36 inch-	diameter	CM
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,				•		7
,	•	,	•	•		
18. Describe t	he purpose of	subsurface dra	uinage. (fr	ame· 6-60)		,
					٠,	;
19. What is the located above th		stance in feet the er table? (fram		ry road or	airfield s	houl
,	, , 					
				. 4		
•	**				•	

•							·			_	_
•	¥ - 1										
•	•			`							
2 (fram	1. Explain 6.6-72)	the	difference	between	the.	French	drain	and	the	tile	drain.
			ø.				#				
•						,					
					•						



LESSON 7

EARTHWORK OPERATIONS AND EXPEDIENT SURFACES

CREDIT HOURS	1
TEXT ASSIGNMENT	Attached Memorandum

LESSON OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will, in following subject areas, be able to:

- 1. Typical construction tasks Discuss the logical sequence for scheduling; define key words in scheduling; explain the use of the dozer for ground preparation and construction; and finally describe the components of a road and airfield.
- 2. Road expedients Discuss the classification of road expedients according to terrain and construction effort; discuss construction of cordured roads, chespaling, portable metal landing mats, the army track, tread roads, and snow and ice expedients.
- 3. Airfield portable surfaces Discuss airfield portable surfaces to include the two classes (landing mat and nylon membrane), their description and use, and describe briefly the use of dust palliatives and their limitations.

CONTENTS

î.	•	, Frames
Set 1.	Typical Construction Tasks	7-1 to 7-20
2.	Road Expedients	7-21 to 7-50
3.	Airfield Portable Surfaces	7-51 to 7-59

Set 1. Typical Construction Tasks.

FRAME 7-1.

A road or airfield construction project is broken down into basic construction tasks which are performed in logical phases or sequence. After one task of the project, such as the clearing of trees and brush, has been completed on a certain area, the second construction task of stripping the area is begun. At the same time, the first task of clearing would be started in another area. Thus, time and effort can be saved by performing several types of construction tasks simultaneously. The simultaneous scheduling of construction in logical ______ contributes to the efficient completion of a construction project.

(subbase) (depth) (7-15)

FRAME 7-16.

As previously discussed, compaction is required to obtain a stable soil foundation. Heavy pneumatic-tired rollers are preferred for _______ the ______, but final shaping is done when grader.



(stringers) (substantial) (7-30) FRAME 7-31

The third type of corduroy — heavy (panel 7-4) — requires the use of sleepers. These are heavy logs 10 to 12 inches in diameter and long enough to carry the entire road and are placed at right angles to the centerline on 4-foot centers. Sleepers give added ______ and stability to the roadway. The corduroy with stringers is constructed on top of the sleepers.

(army track) (smooth) (7-45) FRAME 7-46.

Another expedient is the tread road. Tread roads are made by preparing two narrow parallel treadways of select material for vehicular wheels to use over otherwise impassable ground. The material used may be anything from palm leaves to 4-inch planks with a consequent wide variation in the capacity and durability of the road. Roads made by preparing two narrow parallel treadways of select material are called _______ roads.



(tasks) (phases) (7-1)

FRAME 7-2.

A step or particular type operation in a construction project is known as a (1) ______. When the task is performed would be its (2)

(compacting) (subbase) (7-16)

FRAME 7-17.

7 _ 5

(strength) (7-31)

FRAME 7-32.

(tread) (7-46)

FRAME 7-47.

Because of the wide variance of materials from which they can be constructed, tread roads can be either "hasty" or "heavy" expedients. Tread type construction is better adapted to muddy terrain than to sandy, though a heavy treadway can be used in either type situation. Tread roads can either be ______ or _____ expedients.

7/- 6

242



(1) task (2) phase (7-2) FRAME 7-3.

Specific construction tasks are common to road, airfield, and railroad projects.

These tasks include—clearing and grubbing, stripping, ditching (drainage), cut and fill (earthwork), compaction, preparation of subbase and base course, and surfacing. The _______ completion of projects depends on the proper______ of construction tasks.

(base course) (subbase) (subgrade) (7-17)

FRAME 7-18.

Base course construction includes the placing and compaction of controlledlifts of blended aggregate. The material used for a (1)

is generally well graded gravel or crushed rock. If necessary,
the materials may be (2)

on the job by using a grader.

Best compaction is obtained from pneumatic-tired rollers with final rolling made by three-wheel rollers. As with subgrades, high spots are removed and final shaping is done with the (3)

(portable) (pretabricated) (7-32) FRAME 7-33;

(hasty) (heavy) (7-47); FRAME 7-48.

The most important single type of tread road is the plank tread road (panel 7-8). Sleepers 12 to 16 feet long are first laid perpendicular to the centerline, on 3-to-4-foot centers depending on the loads to be carried and subgrade conditions. Then place 4 x 10-inch planks parallel to the traffic to form 2 treads, about 36 inches apart. If finished timber is not available, use logs as sleepers. The is the most important type of tread road. When securely spiked together, a plank tread road is a very durable "heavy" expedient.



(efficient) (scheduling) (7-3)

FRAME 7-4.

Clearing inclu	des the removal of brush a	and trees from the construct	ion site.
•	art at the point of disposal	l and fan outward so that ti	rees and
brush can be push	ed over a cleared area. If	logs are cut from felled tr	ees, this
should be done in t	the disposal area to avoid i	nterference with the clèarin	g opera-
tion. (1)	should begin at	the point of (2)	
and (3)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	for the efficient rer	noval of
trees and brush f	rom an area.		

(1) base course (2) blended (3) grader (7-18)

FRAME 7-19.

The final construction task is that of surface preparation. For military roads the top of the base course will often be used as the wearing surface. Fine material will be spread, watered, and rolled with a steel wheeled roller to give the road a smooth water repellant.

To provide a longer lasting road a bituminous surface may be used.



(1) heavy (2) diagonal (3) impact (7-33) FRAME 7-34.

Chespaling, a "hasty" expedient used in either mud or sand, is made from small green saplings it preferably about 1½ inches in diameter, and 6½ feet long, wired together to form about a 12-foot-long mat (panel 7-5). These mats are often rolled into bundles and carried on each wheeled vehicle, then used when necessary to cross sandy terrain or to get out of mud.

(plank) (tread) (road) (7-48)

FRAME 7-49.

Now let us consider expedient roadways for snow and ice conditions. An adverse condition is encountered where snow and ice are so plentiful as to make removal impractical. Here expedient roads can be made out of the snow itself. When the road is laid out, more emphasis must be placed on making grades and curves as gentle as possible. Then the snow is compacted into a hard mass capable of supporting the weight of vehicles. A harder surface can be made by pouring water on the compacted snow and allowing it to freeze. When snow and ice cannot be removed, a-road can be made by _______ the snow and making the ______ and _____ as gentle as possible.

(1) clearing (2) disposal (3) fan o	utward (7-4)	
FRAME 7-5.	•	
Two types of equipment are us	ed in (1)	operations.
The crawler dozer is the best piece of	equipment when large trees	or steep slopes
are involved. Wheeled dozers do we	ell in light clearing operatio	ns. In a heavy
stand of large timber (2)		would be
used; (3)		
	<u> </u>	
	·	
		•
•		•
	•	
• •		
٠		
,		
(surface) (7-19)		•
FRAME 7-20.		
. Except for forward Army run		
surfaced. After the	3	
a portable landing mat or a bitumi	nous	is added.
		•
<u>ដ</u> ដ		



(chespaling) (mud) (sand) (7-34) FRAME 7-35.

Chespaling mats may be constructed from di	mensioned	timbers an	d wired
together to resemble a picket fence. A variation	n, slightly	more effect	ive for
crossing sand, is made by attaching chicken wire	netting to	the bottom	of the
mats. Attaching		·	
to the bottom of chespaling mats, makes them mor	e effective	in	•

(compacting) (curves) (grades) (7-49) · FRAME 7-50.

Frozen lakes or streams can be used to move tranc. However, the route must be first carefully reconnoitered for quality of ice, a ickness, cracks, and shore conditions. The load bearing capacity can be determined either by an actual test or by consulting tables, such as panel 7-9. Ice 12 to 15 inches thick will safely support ______ ton vehicles spaced ______ feet apart.

(1) clearing (2) crawler dozers (3) wheeled dozers (7-5) FRAME, 7-6.

Grubbing is the removal and disposal of stumps and embedded boulders left in the area after clearing. Crawler dozers are very efficient, for removing stumps up to 30 inches in diameter. The removal of stumps after clearing is a ______ task for which the _____ can be used effectively.

Set 2. Road Expedients.

(base course) (surface) (7-20)

FRAME 7-21.

In the theater of operations, orthodox or permanent construction of military roads is often impossible due to the condition of the ground, the tactical situation, or other circumstances and in such cases some expedient means must be employed. In place of orthodox or permanent construction methods, _______ methods must often be used for the construction of military roads.

(chicken wire netting) (sand) (7-35) FRAME 7-36.

A chespaling road is constructed by laying a double row of mats, each mat having its long axis parallel to the centerline, with a 1-foot overlap at the centerline. The successive mats are then wired together. This type of road must be kept wet to prevent the saplings from becoming brittle and breaking. Chespaling mats should have a 1-foot overlap and should be (1) ______ together. The saplings should also be kept (2):_______

Set 3. Airfield Portable Surfaces.

(10) (65) (7-50)

FRAME 7-51.

The use of portable surfaces of some kind provides certain advantages in the construction of airfield surfaces. Batching plant erection and the logistical problems encountered when using concrete or bituminous materials usually preclude the extensive use of permanent type surfacing in theater of operations airfield construction. The time required to surface a runway with _______ is far less than with a concrete or bituminous surface.

(grubbing) (crawler dozer) (7-6) FRAME 7-7.

Stripping, another task, consists of removing the organic material or overburden from the project area. The removal of topsoil would be termed _____.

(expedient) (7-21)

FRAME 7-22.

The choice of the material used is important in securing best and quickest results. With a choice of materials, the principal factors which will determine the type of expedient used will be the time available for construction, desired life of the road, and the type of terrain the road must traverse. On the other hand, the type of material available will be the controlling factor which will determine the _______ of ______ selected.

(1) wired (2) wet (7-36)

FRAME 7-37.

An excellent chespaling type expedient for beach roadways, used extensively in the Pacific theater in World War II, is the bamboo mat. These mats are very light and comparatively strong. They are made by splitting 2-inch bamboo rods and weaving them into a mat in a manner similar to rug-weaving. The rods should be soaked before weaving and the mats should be kept moist while in use. For beach roadways the _______ is an excellent expedient.

(portable) (surfaces) (7-51)

FRAME 7-52.

Portable surfaces for airfields fall into two principal classes — the landing mat and nylon membrane. Landing mats are designed to provide a structural load distributing media and wearing surface. Nylon membranes are intended only to protect otherwise structurally adequate surfaces from changing character in wet weather and to eliminate dust. The two principal classes of airfield portable surfaces are _______ and.

(stripping) (7-7)

FRAME 7-8.

The equipment used in stripping are dozers, tractor scrapers, and graders. Dozers are the best choice of equipment when the material is to be moved only a short distance. For longer hauls, the tractor scraper combination is best. For light stripping, the grader can be used. Scrapers are loaded while moving forward to the disposal area. Therefore, in stripping for an airstrip, the tractor scraper would be used for (1) ______ hauls, the dozer for (2) ______ hauls. Light stripping could be accomplished by use of the (3) ______.

(type) (expedient) (7-22)

FRAME 7-23.

In practice, the life of a facility will depend greatly on the time used to build it. Expedient roads can be classified as "hasty" expedients when they are to be built quickly, and last only a short time, and as "heavy" expedients when they require more time to build and last longer when built. The two expedient types classified by design, life, and time required to construct are ______ and _____ expedients.



(bamboo mat) (7-37) FRAME 7-38.

(landing mat) (nylon membrane) (7-52) FRAME 7-53.

Two general categories of landing mats have been established, one for medium duty and one for light duty. Each is capable of sustaining 200 coverages of a 25,000 pound single wheel load with tire pressure of 250 pounds per square inch. The medium duty mat can be placed over a subgrade with a CBR as low as 4, while the ______ mat must be placed on a subgrade having a CBR of at least 10.

(1) long (2) short (3) grader (7-8) FRAME 7-9.

Ditching is the task of providing drainage for a construction site. Ditching operations include the shaping of open drainage gutters and also the excavation of ditches for utilities or closed drainage systems. The ditching operation should start at the lowest elevation which will insure proper drainage on the project Care should be taken that backfill material in closed trenches is properly compacted. In view of the above, drainage gutters would be started as (1) as possible to properly drain the site. In closed trenches, (2) material should be carefully compacted.

(hasty) (heavy) (7-23)

FRAME 7-24.

Road expedients can be further classified according to a third factor, type of terrain. "Mud expedients" as structurally strong and spread the load over a wide area of the subgrade. "Sand expedients" need not be structurally strong because the confine the ground under them and take advantage of the high bearing capacity of the sand. My and sand expedient roads are used according to ______ condition Expedient snow and ice routes would also be examples of classification according to terrain.

(sandy) (7-38)

FRAME 7-39.

Metal landing mats can be placed directly on the sand to the length and width desired, though membrane underneath the mats greatly improves the job. The smoother and firmer the subgrade, the better the resulting road. The mat is placed so that its long axis is perpendicular to, the flow of traffic and each section must overlap the previous one so that the required connections can be accomplished. When using metal landing mats, the subgrade should be made as _____ and ____ as possible.

(light duty) (7-53)

FRAME 7-54.

Integral locking lugs provide easy assembly and end connectors prevent the mats from curling up at the ends. Laying rates vary from 243 to 574 sq ft man-hour. The side and end locking devices enable individual mats to be removed for repair or replacement, even in the middle of a completed runway. The side and end ______ devices provide ease of assembly and ready replacement.

(1) soon (2) backfill (7-9)

FRAME 7-10.

For trenches, the ditching machine is normally used. For harder materials, the back hoe should be used. For cutting and shaping open ditches, the grader and dozer are employed. There are three methods used in ditching: by use of back hoe, the ditching machine, or _____ and _____.

(terrain) (7-24)

FRAME 7-25.

There are several types of materials used for expedient roads such as—corduroy, chespaling, metal landing mats, army track, and others. Each type of material has its advantages and disadvantages in a given situation. Therefore, the type of material used must be ________ to the particular situation. The engineer with ingenuity will discover additional materials and their adaptation for expedient road construction.



(smooth) (firm) (7-39) FRAME 7-40.

Metal landing mats can also be used on mud, but they are not sa	tisfactory
on mad when used alone. Mud pumps through the joints and the r	nat sinks
until it becomes ineffective. Experiments have proven that with the	
membrane to prevent the pumping of the mud, a fairly effective	expedient
can be constructed. Metal landing mats should not be used in	:
unless some measures are taken to stop the mud from	through
the joints.	N ()

(locking) (7-54)

ERAME 7-55.

Several nylon membrane surfaces have been developed, bu	it only the T-17 is
available in Army supply. The T-17 is a neoprene-coate	nylon embrane
designed to furnish a dust-and water-proofing capability for	landing areas or
access roads si	urfaces provide a
- and	cap-
ability for landing areas or access roads.	

359

(grader) (dozer) (7-10) FRAME 7-11.

Cuts and fills are types of earthmoving operations. Both are made as applicable to maintain a correct grade or elevation for road and airfield projects. Insofar as possible, the cutting operation is planned and keyed-in with the filling operation so that these two operations are as nearly balanced as possible. The removal of excess material is by (1) ______ and the emplacement of additional material is by (2) ______. Cuts and fills should be as nearly (3) ______ as possible.

(keyed or suited) (7-25)

FRAME 7-26.

360

(1) mud (2) pumping (7-40) **FRAME** 7-41.

A second layer of the steel mat, laid as a treadway over the initial layer, will further increase the effectiveness of this expedient. In either case, the foundation should be as smooth as possible. A second layer of metal landing mat, used as a ______, will increase its effectiveness as a road surface.

(aylon membrane) (dust) (water-proofing) (7-55) FRAME 7-56.

The T-17 membrane is furnished as Membrane Set, Runway Surfacing, and Membrane Set, Taxiway Surfacing. Panels furnished for runway surfacing are 66 feet wide and 100 feet long. Panels furnished for ______surfacing are 36 feet wide and 100 feet long.

(1) cut (2) fill (3) balanced (7-11)

FRAME 7-12.

As we have seen when discussing stripping, dozers can be used in earthmoving
if the spoil is to be moved a (1) distance. Scrapers are
used when a large quantity of material must be moved, and where the haul distance
to the stockpile, fill, or disposal point is beyond the economical range of (2)
Panel 7-1 shows the method of cycling enabling the equip-
ment to cut and spread in both directions.

(heavy) (terrain) (7-26)

FRAME 7-27.

There are three types of corduroy construction: standard corduroy, corduroy with stringers, and heavy corduroy. The most frequently constructed _______ is the standard type.

(treadway) (7-41)

FRAME 7-42.

One layer of the mat would constitute a "hasty" expedient—quick to lay and not durable enough to last long, but a "heavy" expedient can be constructed simply by using several layers, best laid over a prepared base. Metal landing mats can be used to make either ______ or _____ expedients.

(taxiway) (7-56)

FRAME 7-57.

The T-17 membrane can be placed on unprepared subgrade, but will offer better service if the topsoil is removed to provide base stability and alinement. No special skill is required for emplacement. A ditch is cut along each side of a runway or road, the panel is then stretched across and anchored by backfilling the ditch. Rolls are laid longitudinally. The panels are overlapped and bonded by an adhesive prepared for neoprene-coated materials. For best results ______ should be ______ to provide a smooth subgrade.

(1) short (2) dozers (7-12) FRAME 7-13.

Compaction is the artificial densification of a soil mass (fill, subgrade, or base course) without appreciable change in moisture content. After loose material has been spread, it must be compacted to eliminate voids and attain bearing strength thus precluding settlement. The moisture content of the soil being compacted must be carefully controlled. The process of artificial ______ is called

(corduroy) (7-27)

FRAME 7-28,

The standard type corduroy (panel 7-2) requires the placing of 6-to 8-inch-diameter logs about 13 feet long adjacent to each other (butt to tip). Along the edges of the roadway thus formed, 6-inch-diameter logs are placed as guardrails (curbs) and drift-pinned in place. The dimensions of the logs used in a standard type corduroy roadway are _________ to _________ inches in diameter and about ________ feet long. Pickets about 4 feet long driven into the ground at regular intervals hold the roadway in place.

(hasty) (heavy) (7-42)

FRAME 7-43.

One difficulty encountered in using metal landing mats is their tendency to curl up at edges. This can be overcome by making an excavation at the edges of the road about one foot deep with a three to one slope on the side of the excavation nearest the road. The mats are bent to fit the trench, placed in position and the excavation back-filled over them. Another method of securing the edges is to use a curb as shown in panel 7-6. Metal landing mats will tend to up at the ______ and measures should be taken to correct this difficulty.

(topsoil) (removed) (7-57)

FRAME 7-58.

Another method of eliminating dust from runways, taxiways, hardstands, and warmup aprons is by the use of dust palliatives. Oil and vegetation can be used successfully as dust palliatives. However, these cannot be used on the present jet based fields because heat and jet blast would set them on fire and displace them. (1) _______ is extremely harmful to airplane engines. Oil and vegetation palliatives can only be used on (2) _______ airfields.

(densification) (compaction) (7-13)

FRAME \$14.

Sheepsfo	ot and pneumatic-tired rollers are generally used to compact em-
bankments (fills) below the subgrade. Regardless of the equipment used, it is
necessary to	place the fill in thin layers (6 to 9 inches) to insure uniform (1)
,	throughout the mass, while at the same time controlling
the (2)	content. Because of its protruding feet the (3)
• •	roller is very effective in compacting plastic soils.

(6) (8) (13) (7-28)

FRAME 7-29.,

To give the corduroy greater smoothness, the chinks between the logs are filled with brush, rubble, twigs, and so forth. The whole surface of the roadway is then covered with a layer of gravel or dirt. In other words, the roadway must be made as _____ as possible.

.(curl) (edges) (7-43) FRAME 7-44.

Another expedient road surface is the portable timber expedient known as army track, (panel 7-7). This can be used to pass vehicles across sandy terrain. The track consists of 4 x 4 or larger timbers threaded at each end on a 12-inch wire rope and resembles the ties of a railroad track. The timbers must be spaced not greater than the distance which will allow the smallest wheeled vehicle using the road to obtain traction. Army track is a _______ timber expedient and resembles the ______ of a railroad track.

(1) dust (2) non-jet (7-58)

FRAME 7-59.

Bituminous materials are commonly used as dust palliatives. Chemical agents such as calcium chloride (CaCl₂) have also been used with success. However, CaCl₂ is generally not used on airfields because of its corrosive effect on aircraft. ______ materials or ______ have been successfully used as _______

- 30

(1) density (2) moisture (3) sheepsfoot (7-14) FRAME 7-15.

The task of subbase construction includes the placement and compaction of select material between the subgrade and the base course. The depth of the subbase will depend upon the depth which will affect the structural design or be affected by climatic conditions. The material between the subgrade and base course is called ______ and its ______ is determined by the desired bearing capacity or climatic conditions. Sometimes compaction alone will give the subgrade sufficient bearing capacity, and a subbase is not required.

Turn back to bottom of page 7.3.

(smooth) (7-29)

FRAME 7-30.

A more substantial road can be made by placing log stringers (panel 7-3) parallel to the centerline on about 3-foot centers. The corduroy decking then is laid on the stringers and securely pinned to them. The surfaced area is prepared as for the standard corduroy. Therefore the stringer corduroy road is the same as the standard corduroy except that _______ are used under the decking making it more _______ than the standard corduroy road.

Turn back to top of page 7-4.

(portable) (ties) (7-44) FRAME 7-45.

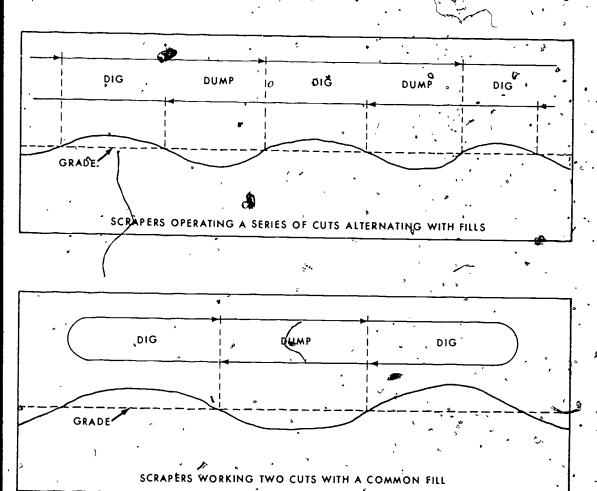
Cable holes are drilled at a 45° angle to the centerline so the cable will bend and prevent individual timbers from moving together. Cables are anchored securely at both ends. The spaces between the timbers are filled in with select material to smooth out the surface. Spaces between timbers in ______ should be filled to ______ out the surface.

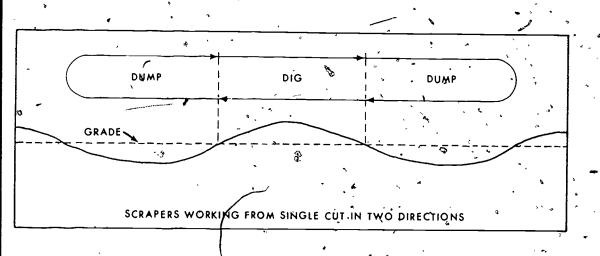
Turn back to bottom of page 7-4.

(bituminous) (CaCl₂) (dust) (palliatives) (7-59)

END OF FRAMES
PANELS AND SELF TEST FOLLOW.

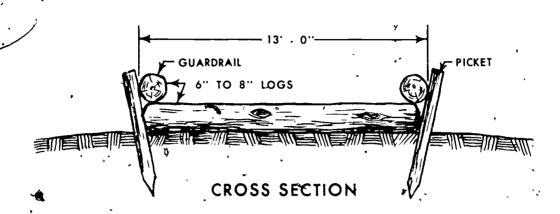
Panel 7-1. Scraper Operations.



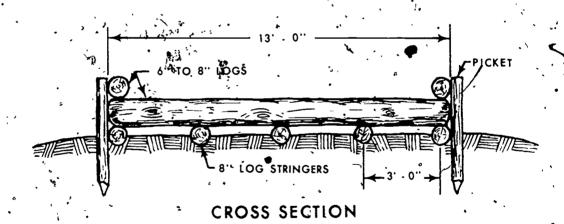


7 - 33

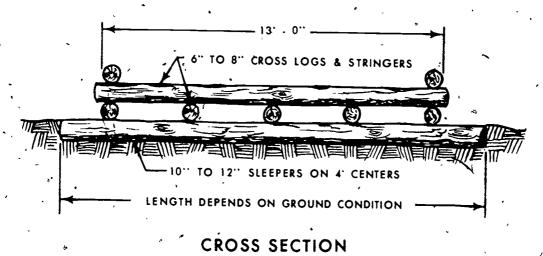
Panel 7-2. Standard Corduroy.



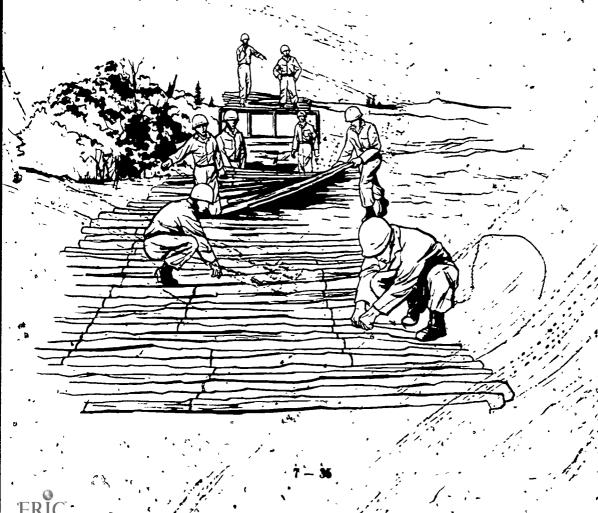
Panel 7-3. Corduroy with Stringers.



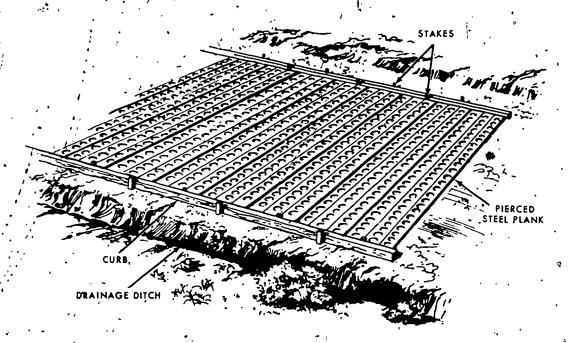
Panel 7-4. Hegyy Corduroy.



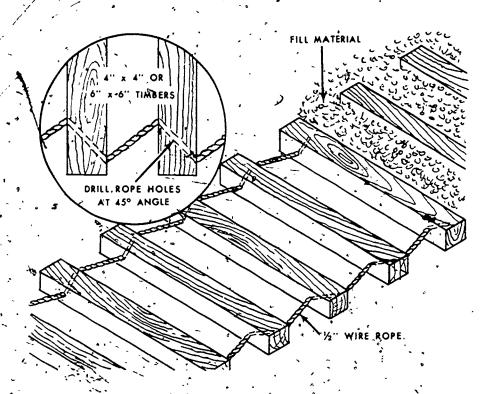
Panel 7-5. Laying a Chespaling Road.



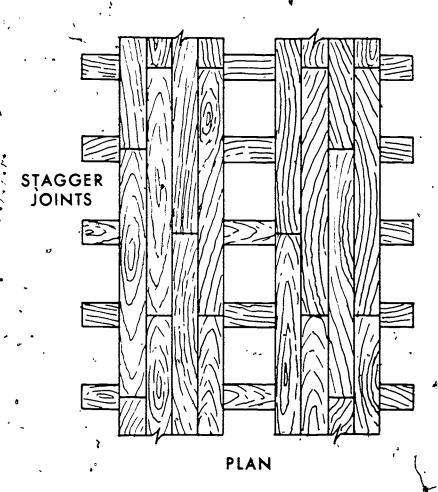
Panel, 7-6. Landing Mat Road.



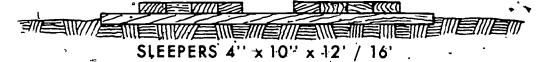
Panel 7-7. Army Track.



Panel 7-8. Plank Tread Road.



FLOORING 3"/4" x 10" x 10'-0"

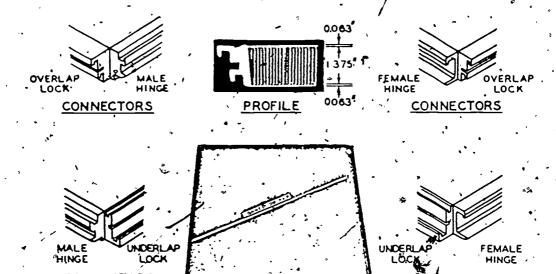


CROSS SECTION

Panel 7-9. Load Capacity of Ice.

Thickness of ice- in inches	Capacity	Minimum spacing
11/2	Individual soldiers	20 paces
2,	Individual soldiers	5 paces
4	Single horse or infantry column	65 feet
8	Administrative vehicle artillery up to 2½ tons, or 4-ton vehicles with maximum axle load of 2.7 tons	65 feet
10-13	8-ton (gross) vehicles, including	
_	loaded 2½-ton truck	65 feet
12-15	10-ton vehicle (gross)	65 feet
14-18	20-ton vehicle (gross)	65. feet
20-38	40-ton vehicle (gross)	100 feet

Panel 7-10. MX-19 Aluminum Mat.



PLAN OF PANEL NOMINAL DIMENSIONS 4-21/4" X 4-11/2"

CONNECTORS

LESSON 7

SELF TEST

truction tasks. Whoroject? (frame 7-1)		sing entitle	i completion	or a con	istruction
						<u>. </u>
* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *			•			
* 4	<u> </u>					
•	_ _	`		•		
	1					
2. Describe t	he direction o	f the clear	ing operati	on with resp	ect to the	disposal
rea. (framė 7-4)	٠		Ç	. ``		~
		,	· <u>*</u>	e		
	•			<u></u>		
			_~			
•			, ,			• 4 •
-3 - Define gru his task. (frame 7₅	ibbing and na	me the pi •	ece of equ	ipment best	suited to	perform
	• '	•			•	,
•	*	18.		<u> </u>		
**	<u>, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , </u>			<u> </u>	•	
,	41		•			, \
	a dig	•	•			
*	actor in considitches are e	ssential to	good drai	ining combat nage. What	-ready ro	pads ar

)		
· · ·		<u></u>
<u>, </u>		•
,		
1		
•	•	
6. Base course construction in s of blended aggregate. The manaded gravel or crushed rock. Discurpaired once placing of the blended	iterial for blended a ss the operations wh	aggregate is generally wich follow and the equipme
		- v
	•	
-		
**		, .
4.		
7. Support your choice of one of		•
litary roads. (frame 7-22) a. time available	c. terrain feat	tures
·	c. terrain feat	
a. time available		
a. time available b. desired life of facility	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	d. choice of m	naterials
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by different classifications. (frame	which road expedition (7-23)	ents are classified and gi
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by	which road expedition (7-23)	ents are classified and gi
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by different classifications. (frame	which road expedition (7-23)	ents are classified and gi
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by different classifications. (frame	which road expedition (7-23)	ents are classified and gi
a. time available b. desired life of facility 8. Give the characteristics by different classifications. (frame	which road expedition (7-23)	ents are classified and gi

a. stringer b. heavy d. sleeper 11. Diagonal corduroy is preferred for heavy traffic. What is the purpose of iagonal construction? (frame 7-33) 12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)	errain. quently?	Corduroy construction makes an extell Which of the following types of cordure? (frame 7.27 and panel 7.2)	ent road e by construc	expedient o tion is used	ver mudd d most fre	y e-
11. Diagonal corduroy is preferred for heavy traffic. What is the purpose of iagonal construction? (frame 7.33) 12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7.40)	.	a. stringer c. stand	lard .	`		•
12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)		b. heavy d. sleep	er ·			
12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)				 		_
12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)			•	•		
12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)				,		-
12. Chespaling is especially useful as a hasty expedient for traversing muddy or andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7.5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)		•				<u>«</u>
andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)		Diagonal corduroy is preferred for heavy construction? (frame 7-33)	y traffic. V	What is the	purpose o	of
andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)		•				*
andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)						*
andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)	/					
andy terrain. What must be done to chespaling in the way of maintenance? (frame 36 and panel 7-5) 13. What should be used with metal landing mats to make them remain stable uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)						 >
uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)		punck 1 0/	•	•	•	
uring periods of heavy-rainfall? (frame 7-40)	·	,	· -	.≠	· 	_
uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)		, panex 1 0/	•			· (
uring periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)		panex (o)		•		·`. —
14. Over what type terrain is army track most effective? (frame 7-14)		, panex t o				
14. Over what type terrain is army track most effective? (frame 7-14)	13.	What should be used with metal landing	mats to ma	ake them re	main stab	
14. Over what type terrain is army track most effective? (frame 7-14)	13.	What should be used with metal landing	mats to ma	ake them re	main stab	
14. Over what type terrain is army track most effective? (frame 7.14)	13.	What should be used with metal landing	mats to ma	ake them re	main stab	le
14. Over what type terrain is army track most effective? (frame 7-14)	13.	What should be used with metal landing	mats to ma	ake them re	main stab	
	13.	What should be used with metal landing	mats to ma	ake them re	main stab	-
	13. during p	What should be used with metal landing periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)				
	13. uring p	What should be used with metal landing periods of heavy rainfall? (frame 7-40)				le

• ,					,	•		•	
	٥		•	•					
6. In acti	c regions, w, what ot	exceller her ste	nt roads o p is most	can be	made of sn ial? (fram	ow. B e 7-49	esides)	the c	ompac ,
	_		•				,		
					1.			77	
17. How r ce 1 ½ inches t	nany paces thick? (fra	s apart me 7-50	、 should ir) and par	ndividua nel 7-9)	al soldiers	be spa	ced w	hen c	rossin
				·	J.				
	•				·) .				
							•		
3 4									
18. Landii a structural loac mats should be	d distribut:	ing med	lium and	wearin	g surface.	What	catego	ry of	landin
a structural load	d distribut:	ing med	lium and	wearin	g surface.	What	catego	ry of	landin
a structural load	d distribut:	ing med	lium and	wearin	g surface.	What	catego	ry of	landin
a structural load mats should be 19. What	d distribut e used wh	en the	lium and subgrade	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and	ry of pane	landin
a structural load mats should be 19. What	d distribut e used wh	en the	lium and subgrade	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and	ry of pane	landing
a structural load mats should be 19. What	d distribut e used wh	en the	lium and subgrade	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and	ry of pane	landing
a structural load mats should be 19. What	d distribut e used wh	en the	lium and subgrade	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and	ry of pane	landing
a structural load mats should be sho	d distribute used when is the purple 7-52 and	oose of panel	imparmea	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and sed as	a sur	ace fo
a structural load mats should be sho	d distribute used when is the purple 7-52 and	oose of panel	imparmea	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and sed as	a sur	landing
a structural loa mats should be	d distribute used when is the purple 7-52 and	oose of panel	imparmea	wearing CBR	g surface. is 7? (fra	What me 7-	catego 53 and sed as	a sur	ace fo

ERIC*

ANSWERS TO SELF TEST

LESSON	1	 	_Construction	Requirements	and	Design	Criteria.
				•	A	_	

All references are to lesson frames and to panels.

- 1. Although engineer units are responsible for maintaining military roads, they provide only major maintenance of Army airfields; that is, work beyond the capability of the using unit. Minor maintenance of Army airfields, therefore, must be done by units using the installation. (frame 1-6)
- 2. There are six principal tasks in road and airfield construction: clearing, grubbing, stripping, earthwork, drainage, and surfacing. Clearing is the removal of timber and surface boulders; stripping is the removal of objectionable top soil. Removal of stumps and roots is grubbing; earthwork is referred to as grading and essentially means cutting off high spots and filling in low places to get a grade level enough. It is the most important construction task because the most time and effort are normally required. Drainage is the removal of undesired volumes of water and surfacing is the final placement of whatever wearing surface will be used. (frames 1-7, 1-8)
- 3. Any sketch which is similar to panel 1-1 showing the wearing surface on top, the base in between and the subgrade on the bottom (panel 1-1).
- 4. Superelevation refers to the slope of a road around a curve; that is, difference in elevation between "outside" and "inside" edges of the traveled way. (frame 1-17)

 - 6. Normal maximum 10 percent
 Desirable maximum tangents and gentle curves, less than 6 percent; sharp curves, less than 4 percent.

 (panel 1-2)
- 8. The slope of a road with a paved crown is set at $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch per foot to the centerline. (panel 1-2)
- 9. The overrun is located between the runway and the approach zone. (panel 1-3)



S,I-1

- 10. The location of roads and airfields depends on the military necessity. However, dense forest and rough terrain require extensive clearing and earthmoving, while use of existing facilities usually saves time. If the military situation permits, good planning generally means maximum use of existing facilities. (frame 1-3)
- 11. Item 5, panel 1-2, requires a minimum of one turnout every $\frac{1}{4}$ mile for single lane roads. Thus, $(2 \div \frac{1}{4}) \cdot 1 = 7$ turnouts are required for a 2 mile stretch of single-lane road. (frame 1-10 and panel 1-2)
- 12. Adding to the length of the runway (3000) the two lengths for the overruns (300 + 300) gives a total length of 3600 feet. (panels 1-3, 1-4)
- 13. The increase in altitude in this case is 2000 feet above the altitude of 1000 feet, so the TGR is increased by 20%. (item 2, panel 1-5). Thus:

$$2000 \times 1.20 = 2400 \text{ ft}$$

The increase in terripperature is 10 degrees and the TGR is less than 5000 feet, so the runway length must be increased by an additional 4%. (item 3, panel 1-5).

$$2400 \times 1.04 = 2496 \text{ ft.}$$

(frames 1-30, 1-31 and panel 1-5)

14. Since this runway is in a rear area, the safety factor is 1.5. (item 4, panel 1-5). Therefore:

$$2496 \times 1.5 = 3744 \text{ ft.}$$

The effective gradient is 1% over 2%, so the runway length must be further corrected by adding another 8%. (item 5, panel 1.5).

 $3744 \times 1.08 = 4043.5$. Rounding this figure up to the next even hundred, (item 6, panel 1-5), the final runway length becomes 4100 feet. (frames 1-32, 1-3, and panel 1-5)

- The length of runway found in panel 1.9 is 450 feet and adding the overrun lengths of 100 feet each gives a total length of 650 feet. (panels 1-7, 1-8, 1-9)
- 16. Panel 1-9 shows minimum width for a service road of a heliport in a forward area as being 11.5 feet. (panel 1-9)

All references are to lesson frames and lesson panels.

- The first purpose of reconnaissance is to find a solution to the tactical need. The most important factor to consider is the tactical need. (frames 2-1 and 2-3)
- 2. A road reconnaissance is made to obtain information about existing roads, primarily for immediate use and establishment of a route. It may include estimates of the practicability of improvement, and the engineer work in conditioning a road to accommodate specified traffic and loads. (frame 2-4)
- 3. Section II of DA Form 1248 provides for detailed information on alinement, drage, foundation and road surface. (frame 2-6 and panel 2-1)
 - 4. Reportable items of section III of DA Form 1248 are:
 - (a) Overhead obstructions, less than 14 feet or 4.25 meters, such as tunnels, midges, overhead wires and overhanging buildings.
 - (b) Reductions in road widths which limit the traffic capacity, such as craters, narrow bridges, archways and buildings.
 - (c) Excessive gradients (above 7 in 100)
 - (d) Curves less than 100 feet (30 meters) in radius.
 - (e) Fords. (panel 2-1)°
- 5. The purpose of **periodic** road reconnaissance is to maintain complete data on the condition of roads currently in use. The information obtained is normally posted on a situation map. To insure that roads are **NOT** maintained longer than needed, maintenance requirements based on periodic road reconnaissance are coordinated with the principal users: (frame 2-7)
- 6. When a new road is determined to be necessary, the first step is called location reconnaissance. (frame 2-8)
- 7. Locating portions of the new road along and over existing roads, railroads, or trails is always a primary goal. The use of existing facilities shortens construction time and, in many cases, provides better roads than can be built from the ground up on the limited time available during combat operation. (frame 2-10)
- 8. The organic soils of a swampy area are the most difficult to drain and have the poorest bearing capacity. Excessive engineer effort and possible road failure can normally be avoided when the types of soils are accurately identified during a location reconnaissance. (frame 2-13)
- 9. Natural drainage is usually good drainage. Locating a road to take advantage of natural drainage also reduces the construction effort required. Long stretches of flat ground often drain poorly. Locating a road along ridges and stream lines usually takes best advantage of natural drainage. (frame 2-14)
- 10. A geologist's advice on ground-water tables is especially useful in location reconnaissance. It is also needed in determining effects of any rock formations,



essentially to avoid extensive blasting work on cut and fill operations and the danger of landslides and rock falls, particularly where clay or shale layers are present. (frame 2-15)

- 11. Rock formations are also important considerations in location reconnaissance in regard to possible quarry sites for construction materials (fill, base course and surface course), ground-water tables and excessive blasting work. (frame 2.16)
- 12. Ease of future maintenance is a factor. In areas of rain or snow, locating the road on the sunny side of slopes and canyons minimizes the possibility of the road's becoming impassible for long periods and eases maintenance work. (frame 2-19)
- 13. At times, tactical and engineering considerations are in conflict with the best location based on the preceding criteria. In these cases, the location criteria must be subordinated. An overriding tactical consideration, for example is that the road must be ready for use when the situation requires it. Improvements may be effected at a later date. (frame 2-20)
- 14. Convenient sites for development as bivouaç areas and supply points may be important tactical requirements, as well as provision for artillery and armor units to leave the road to fire emergency missions. The latter would also enable traffic using the road to take cover in the event of an air attack. (frame 2-21)
- 15. Map reconnaissance and ground reconnaissance are two methods used for determining road location. Study of maps and aerial photographs can readily eliminate obviously undesirable routes and indicate one or more possible routes where ground reconnaissance might be made, minimizing wasted effort. In the final analysis, map reconnaissance supplements ground reconnaissance, and one or both are employed with location reconnaissance. (frame 2.23)
- , 16. A ground reconnaissance can supplement the hasty location of a route. (frame 2-25)
- 17. The engineer study in a deliberate location should contain evaluations of several possible routes in terms of design standards and location criteria. (frame 2-29)
- 18. Other primary control points include terminal points and the intermediate points through which the road must pass. (frame 2-30)
- 19. An example of third order control features is where a road can follow general contour directions. (frame 2.32)
- 20. Tertiary control features are discarded before secondary and secondary features yield to primary. (frame 2-33)
- 21. Sampling 10 percent of the area and applying the result to the entire area is usually sufficient coverage. In small areas a higher percent cruise maybe made. (frame 2.35)
- 22. A map plotting all pertinent data is drawn. Soil classification data at typical locations are included on the map. (frame 2-39 and panel 2-3)

- 23. The elements which must be evaluated to base final location on are alinement, grade, and earthwork. (frame 2-42)
- 24. The time spent in the preparation of a paper location is repaid in better alinement and is directly reflected in both the decreased engineer effort needed for construction and the increased traffic capacity of the finished road. (frame 2-47)
- 25. Road A although the most direct, would not be practical primarily because it crosses the swamp. It also crosses steep grades and requires considerable clearing. The road also does not pass near the quarry a starce of construction material.

Road B also crosses steep grades and in addition a portion of the lake must be crossed. The lake also has steep banks at the crossing sites. Some clearing is also required. The road does not pass near the quarry.

Road D avoids the swamp and the lake and steep grades but requires extensive clearing. It is also the longest route. It passes nearest to the quarry but this is outweighed by the amount of clearing necessary.

Road C is the best route. It follows contour direction, avoids the swamp and lake, passes within having distance of the quarry, and requires little clearing. The least construction effort would be required for Road C. (frame 2-34 and panel 2-4)

All references are to lesson frames and lesson panels.

- 1. Airfield reconnaissance differs from road location reconnaissance in two major considerations. First an airfield project involves more material than a road project. Secondly air traffic, by its very nature, imposes more severe design criteria (see panel 14, lesson 1) than does vehicular traffic. (frames 3-1 and 3-2)
- 2. Reconnaissance missions must be based primarily on user requirements, which, in turn, are often governed by the tactical air support requirements of ground forces. The various headquarters must maintain close liaison with the Air Force and with each other. Each must know what recommassance the other is doing or has a need for (frame 3-6)
- 3. There are six steps in airfield reconnaissance: planning, briefing, preliminary study, air reconnaissance, ground reconnaissance; and reporting. (frame 3-10)
- 4. The preliminary study, represents the mitial work. The party studies the information obtained during the briefing, conducts a map reconnaissance of the area, studies air photos, delineates soil boundaries, assembles other preliminary information, and the actual record is planned. (frame 3-12)
- 5. The purpose of the ground reconnaissance is to answer most questions or to, verify questions formed from the air. (frame 3.15)
- 6. The prompt submission of reconnaissance reports is controlled by time of report schedules: fframes, 3-9 and 3-17)
- 7. Existing airfields are marked with a five mile circle. (frame 3-20 and panel 3-1)
- 9. A ratio of 50:1 should be used for determining the diameters of circles marking obstructions such as radio towers. (frame 3-21 and panel 3-1)
- 9. Referring to panel 3.2 reading along the funnel with the 40:1 glide angle until the horizontal ground distance is 6,000 feet, yields a permissible height of 150 feet. (frame 3.25 and panel 3.2)
- 10. The pilot considers such flying problems as approaches, mental hazards, and physical obstructions, as related to combat type planes which may use the proposed airfield.
- The engineer observer is not as familiar with flight requirements and characteristics of aircraft. He is familiar with the construction problems which may be encountered, and assesses the potential site in terms of construction effort. (frames 3-27 and 3-28)
- 11. In reconnsidering a tentatively selected site, at least three passes are made at 300 feet and the final circuit is flow at 200 feet. (frame 3-31 and panel 3-31

12. L = air speed (ft/sec) x average flight time (sec) Since the flight time is in seconds, count air speed to ft/sec,

$$\frac{100 \text{ mph x 5,280 ft/mi}}{3600 \text{ see/hr}} = 146.666 \text{ ft/sec}$$

The estimated runway length is then,

 $= 146.666 \times 55 = 8,066.83$ ft, say 8,000 ft?

13. En route to the site or a general area, the engineer observer would note borrow pits, quarry sites, and rail or road access routes. He would also note any obvious errors on maps that had been studied.

As in air reconnaissance, enroute to the site to be investigated, the reconnaissance party should note and properly record access routes, location of construction materials, and the positions of potential water points. (frames 3-29 and 3-34)

- 14. The clearing and grubbing effort is estimated by timber cruising, the same as for roads, (frame 3-39)
- 15. Normally, elevations are taken at each 500-foot interval and at any breaks or slope changes. This interval however may be increased to 1000 feet in flat country. (frame 3-40)
- 16. The statement "glide angle is excellent" is transmitted as "GOLF UNQUES-TIONABLE." (frame 3-42 and panel 3-4)
- 17. As in road location, the selection of airfield sites is usually a compromise between engineering, operational, and tactical requirements. (frame 3-46)
- 18. From panel 1-4 (Lesson #1), read under "rear" and across from "maximum grade change per 100 ft" the value of 1.5%. (frame 3-49 and panel 1-4)
- 19. The use of the long straight stretches of the existing road as a "center core" for the airstrip should be considered. (frame 3-51)
- 20. Minimum criterion pertaining to interfering obstructions would require the approach zone be free of obstructions at each end of the flightstrip. (frame 3-53)
- 21. Besides manmade and natural obstructions, there may be situations and layouts which might present a mental hazard to the pilot. An airfield on a plateau with steep sides falling, away immediately beyond the overruns may have perfect approaches, for example, but pilots will always land well down the runways. A canal, ditch, or pole line at the end of a runway has the same effect. (frame 3-54)
- 22. The Air Force All Weather Service (AWS) maintains meteorological information for all populated areas of the world. (frame 3-55)
- 23. Topography will determine the extent of drainage and earthwork required. (frame 3-58)
- 24. It is most important to examine hydrological conditions and soil characteristics because drastic changes may take place between wet and dry seasons. This



makes any evaluations of hydrological conditions made during the dry season misleading. (frame 3-57)

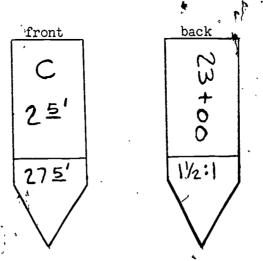
25. Whether a base course is needed and the thickness of the base course are dependent on the characteristics of the soil. (frame 3-59)

il.

All references are to lesson frames and lesson panels.

- 1. Control consists of vertical control points (or bench marks) for the vertical component and horizontal control points for the horizontal component. The control points are frequently called hubs and are short square wooden stakes (2" x 2") driven flush with the ground. Vertical control is generally established by selecting a convenient bench mark as a datum and referencing all other elevations to it. Horizontal control points may be tied into a local grid system: (frames 4-1 to 4-8)
- 2. The primary function of construction stakes is to indicate the alinement of a construction facility, to aid equipment operators, to control specifications and prevent excessive work. (frame 4-11)
- 3. Centerline or alinement stakes are placed on the centerline of a road or airfield to indicate it's location, alignment, and direction. (frame 4-16)
- 4. The side of the centerline stake which faces the starting point is designated as the front of the stake and is marked with the centerline symbol C and applicable PC for point of curvature or PT for point of tangency. Also marked on the front of the stake is the distance from the origin and the fractional part of the station. On the back of the centerline stake, the information on cut (C) or fill (F) required at each station is written. (frame 4-20 to 4-22)
- 5. The stake is 200 feet from the origin and a 1-foot fill is necessary at this location. (frame 4-25)
 - 6. Slope stakes are used to define the limits of grading. (frame 4-26)

7. .



(frame 4-36)

- 28. Offset stakes are used to eliminate resurveying portions of a road or an airfield and accomplish their task as reference points by being placed beyond construction limits. (frame 4-38, 4-39, 4-41, 4-42)
- 9. Horizontal alinement consists of a series of straight lines called tangents connected by horizontal curves. In preparing horizontal alinement, intersecting tangents are laid out first and are later connected by curves. (frame 4-47)
 - 10. 1. Keep number of tangents to a minimum.
 - 2. The connecting tangents of new roads should approach at right angles to existing roads.
 - 3. Tangents should be selected so as to avoid excessive grades.
- 11. PI is defined as the point where two tangents intersect (Point of Intersection). Angle of intersection (I) is the exterior angle formed at the PI and also the angle subtended between the intersection of the radius points at 0 (panel 4-5).

The point where the curve begins or leaves the tangent is called the point of curvature (PC) and the point where the curve joins the tangent or where the curve ends is called the point of tangency (PT) (panel 4-5).

- 12. When hasty type roads and airfields are built in forward areas, high precision is not essential; a fairly good curve can be staked in by the eye and then adjusted as construction proceeds. Another simple way of staking out a curve in a forward area would be to have the driver or a truck make a gradual turn and use the wheel tracks to stake out the curve. (frames 4-68 and 4-69)
- 13. A compound curve is known as a reverse curve when the two curves go in opposite directions. (frame 4-71)
- 14. Vertical alinement of roads and airfields is that portion of the design process that is concerned with the establishment of grades and the determination of the vertical connecting curves between these grades. (frame 4-73)
- 15. The parabolic curve is usually used for vertical curves because it provides smooth transition and the essential dimensions can be easily calculated by the surveying crew in the field. (frames 4.83 and 4.84)
- 16. Two types of parabolic curves are used. The overt (convex) curve is used to curve over a hill. The invert (concave) curve is used to provide transition from a down grade to an upgrade or to a level alinement (tangent). (frames 4-85 and 4-87)
 - 17. PVI The point where two tangent grade lines intersect is called the point of vertical intersection.
 - PVC The point where the curve leaves the gradeline is called the point of vertical curvature.
 - PVT The point where the curve joins the grade line is known as the point of vertical tangency.

1. Entering the table at 4 feet in column 1 and continuing horizontally to column 6, the value for a 24-foot cut with 1 to 1 side slopes is 415 cu yd. Continuing horizontally column 10 indicates that 30 cu yd must be added for the 2 additional feet (24 + 2 = 26 ft), and column 11 indicates that 30 more cu yd must be added for $1^{-1/2}$ to 1 slopes. Thus:

Then:
$$\frac{100}{100} \times 475 = 1,425$$
 cu yd

(frame 5-7 and panel 5-1)

2. Triangles 7 and 8 = 3.4 x (5 + 15) = 3.4 x 20 = 68
9 and 10 = 3.4 x (30 - 0) = 3.4 x 30 =
$$\frac{102}{170}$$

Then:
$$\frac{170}{2} = 85 \text{ sq ft}$$

(frame 5-24 and panel 5-2)

3. From panel 5-6:

End area of cut at station 33 + 00 = 1,156End area of cut at station 33 + 90 = 1,345Sum of end areas = 2,501 sq ft

Since the sum of the end areas is greater than 1,673.9 sq ft break the sum 2501 into two portions -1,200 and 1,301.

Then, from panel 5-3:

For the figure 1,200 the volume is,

2,200 (column heading) + 22.22 (column 0.0) = 2,222.22

For the figure 1,301 the volume is,

2,400 (column heading) + 9.26 (column 0.0) = 2,409.26. Total volume = 4,631.48 cu yd

Since L = 3.390 - 3.300 = 90 ft, the total volume between stations 33 + 00 and 33 + 90 is,

$$\frac{4.631.48 \times 90}{100}$$
 = 4,168.71 say 4,170 cu yd (frames 5-30, 5-32, panels 5-3, 5-6)

- 4. Panel 5-4 shows the factor of cut to fill is based on 125 cubic yards of excavation required to make 100 cubic yards of fill, for fills 2 feet high and under (100/125 = 0.8). For fills over 2 feet high, the factor is 0.85. (frames 5-40 and 5-41)
- 5. The mass diagram is a graph on which the algebraic sum of the embankment and corrected elevation is plotted against linear distance. The linear distance is always plotted as the abscissa and the algebraic sum of the embankment and excavation is plotted as the ordinate. (frame 5-59)

- 6. From panel 5-7, the conversion factor for in place sand to compacted sand is 0.95. Therefore the shrinkage is $1.00 \cdot 0.95 = .05$ or 5%. Thus: $1200 \times 1.05 = 1260$ cu, yds to be excavated. (frame 5-76 and panel 5-7)
- 7. The balance line is a horizontal line between any two points on the mass line where excavation equals embankment. The maximum length of the balance line is predetermined on the basis of an efficient haul. (frame 5-94)
- 8. A balance line above or below any other balance line represents the total net yardage that is to be moved from cut to fill, disregarding the yardage which is a balanced within any 100 foot distance that has both cut and fill. (frame 5-103)
- 9. The direction of haul will be from right to left. This is because this is a sag hump. (frame 5-115)
- 10. The second method entails scaling off the volume from ordinates of the mass diagram. This method is not as accurate but is of sufficient accuracy for most situations. (frame 5-117)
- 11. Materials to be imported and mixed with subgrade soils for subgrade stabilization are included in earthwork computations, but base course or paving materials to be placed above the subgrade are not included. (frame 5-2)
- 12. Cross sections are plotted for each 100-foot station on the adopted centerline for runways and road tangents. They are also plotted at any intermediate place where there is a distinct change along the centerline, and where the natural profile and the gradeline correspond (from cut to fill)

Also, a cross section would be plotted at intermediate places between stations when the surface on either side of the centerline is uneven enough to require plotting in order to represent properly the volumes indicated between the station cross sections. (frames 512 to 514)

13. The area described contains triangles 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11. They can be paired as follows:

Triangles
$$6 = 3 \times (5) = 15$$

 $7 \& 8 = 3.4 \times (5 + 15) = 68$
 $9 \& 10 = 3.4 \times (30 \quad 0) = 102$
 $11^* = 2.1 \times (15) = 31.5$
Total 216.5

dividing by 2 equals 108.25 say 108 ft² (frame 3-23)

- 14. "Counting the squares" consists of counting the enclosed squares and multiplying the result by the area in square feet of one square. This gives the area of the cross section in square feet. The area in square feet of one square is determined by the horizontal and vertical scales used in plotting the cross section. (frame 5-18)
- 15. Reading in table from panel 5-4, across the line marked cut-2 is the value 1,100. This is the volume of fill that can be made from a cut per 100 feet of length.

Multiplying:

$$(1,100) \times (3.5) = 3850 \text{ C.Y.}$$

(panel 5-4 and frame 5-41)

- 16. A tentative runway gradeline is set as a guide in properly assigning equipment prior to detailed computation of earthwork quantities. Establishment of a tentative grade enables work to proceed before detailed computation of earthwork quantities are made. (frame 5-42 to 5-44)
- 17. One method of establishing the tentative grade line is to plot the centerline profile and the profiles of the shoulder edges. The tentative subgrade grade line is then plotted on the profile bearing in mind minimum earthwork and efficient haul limits.

The grade line corrected for transverse slope is then plotted on the corresponding runway and shoulder edges. The areas between the grade line and the profile are then obtained. Because cuts should roughly balance fills, the sum of the areas above the grade line is balanced against the sum of the areas below the grade line. The tentative grade line is shifted until the areas obtained are roughly in balance. (frames 5.45 to 5.49)

- 18. The last step common to both methods of computing borrow pit volumes is to determine cross sectional areas and then determine the volume. (frames 5-50 and 5-52)
- 19. Referring to panel 5-6, reading down column (3) excavation and across from station 41 + 00 gives a value of 196 cubic yards. (frame 5-67 and panel 5-6)
 - 20. The two formulas needed are:
 - (1) excavation strip volume = net excavation
 - (2) embankment + strip volume = net embankment first net excavation:

2169

214

1 1955 cubic yards

next net embankment:

1365 + 214 1579 cubic yards

(frames 5-71, 5-72 and panel 5-6)

- 21. Column 6 deals with the product of the net excavation and the proper shrinkage or swell factor. In terms of columns, column 5 is multiplied by 0.9. (frame .5-74 and panel 5-6)
- 22. Positive values are excavation quantities; negative values are embankment quantities? (frame 5-60)
- 23. An ascending mass line in the diagram indicates an excess of excavation, and a descending mass line an excess of fill along the portion of the area for which the mass diagram is drawn. (frame 5-92)



- 24. When the mass line forms summit humps, the haul will be from the lower to the higher station numbers, when the mass line forms sag humps, the haul will be from the higher to the lower station numbers. (frame 5-93)
- 25. Generally, the average length of haul is approximately equal to the length of a horizontal line drawn midway between the peak of the mass line and the balance line. (frame 5-113)

All references are to lesson frames and lesson panels.

1. In the construction sequence, drainage is listed immediately after the clearing and grubbing phase.

Drainage construction must precede earthwork for two reasons. First, most culverts must be installed in order to allow earthwork operations to progress without interruption; second, fills and cuts must be protected from the effects of rain and overland flow during all phases of construction. (frame 6-4)

2. Standing water on road, runway, and parking area surfaces not only decreases operating efficiency but will eventually saturate the subgrade, causing failure. Sheet flow (moving water) that is too deep or moving too fast will erode the surface over which it moves. Surfaces are built with gentle slopes designed to remove standing water and control sheet flow with minimum damage to surfaces and subgrades.

A minimum slope of 0.5% is necessary to make ditches self-cleaning; the maximum desirable slope is set at about 4%. When the slope becomes greater than the desired maximum, the ditch must be lined with riprap, sodded, or paved. (frames 6-8, 6-16)

- 3. For normal road construction requirements the deep V ditch is most suitable; where extra capacity is needed or where the soil erodes easily the trapezoidal ditch is best; the shallow V ditch is built near airfield runways. (frame 6-14)
- 4. On sidehill cuts and steep grades, checkdams are placed in side ditches to reduce the rate-of-flow (slow the water) and prevent erosion.

Side slopes of the ditch immediately above and below checkdams (panel 6-4) require protection from erosion and scouring. To accomplish this, a weir notch big enough to discharge the anticipated runoff is cut in the middle of the checkdam to prevent backed up water from autting at the edges of the checkdam. An apron, extending from the downstream face of the checkdam, is needed to prevent scouring. (frames 617, 6-18)

5. Formula for spacing of checkdams:

$$S = \frac{100 \text{ H}}{A \cdot B}$$

minimum value of H is 1 foot minimum value of B is 2 percent. A is given as 7 percent

$$s = \frac{(100) \times (1)}{7 - 2} = \frac{100}{5} = 20$$
 feet

(frame 6-19 and panels 6-4, 6-5)

6. Formula for number of checkdams is

$$\vec{N} = \frac{\text{length of ditch}}{\text{spacing}}$$
.

the spacing is calculated as

$$S = \frac{100 \text{ H}}{A \cdot B} = \frac{(100) \times (2)}{4 \cdot 2} = 100 \text{ feet}$$

the number can now be calculated:

$$N = \frac{600}{100} = 6 \text{ checkdams}$$

(frame 6-21 and panel 6-6)

- 7. Whenever natural drainage channels cannot be diverted economically from roads, taxiways, and occassionally runways, facilities must be provided to permit cross-drainage to flow under them. Culverts are used for this purpose. They provide cross-drainage at low points in a fill, provide ditch relief, and continue side ditches at intersections. (frame 6-24)
- 8. Most pipes used for culvert construction are made of either reinforced concrete, cast iron, or corrugated galvanized metal. Pre-formed corrugated metal pipe (CMP) is the easiest to place.

The other choices are too time consuming to compete with CMP. (frame 6-25)

- 9. Although the resulting structures are not as strong as CMP or box culverts, expedient drainage structures can be built using steel (oil, gasoline, or asphalt) drums. (frame 6-30)
- 10. The placement of culverts in meandering channels should be made after proper realinement of the stream is made (when needed). Some construction such as building dams and digging new channels for shifting the stream to proper alinement may be required. (frame 6-34)
- 11. On an 8 percent grade, ditch relief culverts should be placed 300 feet apart. (frame 6.35)

12.
$$A = \frac{W_1 + W_2}{2} \times H + 100\%$$

$$A = \frac{8+6}{2} \times 6 + 100\% = 84 \text{ sq ft}$$

(frame 6-42 and panel 6-12)

13. Using Talbots nomograph, the value of 24 inches is read as the diameter of round pipe. (frame 6-44 and panel 6-14)

14. From panel 6:15, a 48 in. pipe = 12.57 sq ft*

Then:
$$\frac{25}{12.57} = 1.98$$

Use 2 pipe of 48 in. diameter (frame 6:46 and panel 6:15).

15.:
$$D_{max} = \frac{2}{3}$$
 F $D_{max} = \frac{2}{3}$ (7.8 x 12)' = 60.4

Use 60 in diameter pipe (from panel 6-15) (frame 6-51 and panel 6-18)

16. From panel 6-19, under the "120,000 lb plane" heading and across from the 16 gage pipe, the cover requirement is read as 4.0 feet. (frame 6-53 and panel 6-19)

17.
$$\frac{1}{2}$$
D or $\frac{36}{2} = 18$ inches

18. The object of subsurface drainage is to lower the water table by tapping the ground water and carrying it off in a pipe or ditch. (frame 6-60)

19. In road or airfield construction the water table should be a minimum of 5 feet below the facility. (frame 6-61)

20. Deep open ditches are not usually constructed in long stretches but are more commonly employed in short stretches at critical points. However, in many cases, such ditches are a traffic hazard—and they are also subject to erosion. (frame 6-67)

21. A tile drain is the same as the French drain except that the trench may be filled with gravel in lieu of crushed stone and a pipe is placed near the bottom (panel 6-21). The pipe is usually 6 inches in diameter although 8- and 10-inches pipes are also used. (frame 6-72)

All references are to lesson frames and lesson panels.

- 1. A road of airfield construction project is broken down into basic construction tasks which are performed in logical phases sequence. After one task of the project, such as the clearing of trees and brush, has been completed on a certain area, the second construction task of stripping the area is begun. At the same time, the first task of clearing would be started in another area. Thus, time and effort can be saved by performing several types of construction tasks simultaneously. (frame 7-1)
- 2. Clearing should start at the point of disposal and fan outward so that trees and brush can be pushed over a cleared area. If logs are cut from felled trees, this should be done in the disposal area to avoid interference with the clearing operation. (frame 7-4)
- 3. Grubbing is the removal and disposal of stumps and embedded boulders left in the area after clearing. Crawler dozers are very efficient for removing stumps up to 30 inches in diameter. (frame 7-6)
- 4. For trenches, the ditching machine is normally used. For harder materials, the back hoe should be used. For cutting and shaping open ditches, the grader and dozer are employed. (frame 7-10)
- 5. The reason for placing the fill in thin layers and then compacting is to insure uniform density throughout the mass while at the same time controlling the moisture content: (frame 7.14)
- 6. Once the materials are blended (if needed), compaction is obtained from pneumatic-tired rollers with final rolling made by three-wheel rollers. As with subgrades, high spots are removed and final shaping is done with the grader. (frame 7-18)
- 7. The choice of the material used is important in securing best and quickest results. With a choice of materials, the principal factors which will determine the type of expedient used will be the time available for construction, desired life of the road, and the type of terrain the road must traverse. (frame 7-22).
- 8. In practice, the life of a facility will depend greatly on the time used to build it. Expedient roads can be classified as "hasty" expedients when they are to be built quickly, and last only a short time, and as "heavy" expedients when they require more time to build and last longer when built. (frame 7-23)
- 9. A corduroy road can be classified both as a heavy and terrain expedient. (frame 7-26)
- 10. The most frequent type of corduroy construction is the standard type. (frame 7.27)



- 11. Putting the decking at an angle decreases the impact load, since each log supports only one wheel at a time and there is longitudinal as well as lateral weight distribution. (frame 7.38)
- 12. Chespaling must be kept wet to prevent the saplings from becoming brittle and breaking trame. 736 and panel 7-5)
- Motal landing mats can also be used on mud, but they are not satisfactory on mud when used alone. Mud pumps through the joints and the mat sinks until it becomes ineffective. Experiments have proven that with the use of membrane to prevent the pumping of the mud, a fairly effective expedient can be constructed. (frame 7-40)
- 14. The army track is excellent in sandy terrain. The track consists of 4 x 4 or larger timbers threaded at each end on a ½ inch wire rope and resembles the ties of a railroad track. The timbers must be spaced not greater than the distance which will allow the smallest wheeled vehicle using the road to obtain traction. (frame 7-44)
- 15. The most important single type of tread road is the plank tread road (panel .7-8). Sleepers 12 to 16 feet long are first laid perpendicular to the centerline, on 3-to-4-foot centers depending on the loads to be carried and subgrade conditions. Then place 4 x 10-inch planks parallel to the traffic to form 2 treads, about 36 inches apart. (frame 7-48 and panel 7-8)
- 16. Emphasis should be placed on making grades and curves as gentle as possible. (frame 7-49)
- 17. From panel 7-9, at a thickness of ice of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, individual soldiers are spaced 20 pages at a minimum. (frame 7-50 and panel 7-9)
- 18. Two general categories of landing mats have been established, one for medium duty and one for light duty. Each is capable of sustaining 200 coverages of a 25,000 pound single wheel load with tire pressure of 250 pounds per square inch. The medium duty mat can be placed over a subgrade with a CBR as low as 4. (frame 7.53 and panel 7.10).
- 19. Portable surfaces for airfields fall into two principal classes the landing mat and nylon membrane. Landing mats are designed to provide a structural local distributing media and wearing surface. Nylon membranes are intended only protect otherwise structurally adequate surfaces from changing character in wet weather and to eliminate dust. (frame 7-52 and panel 7-55)
- 20. Bituminous materials are commonly used as dust palliatives. Chemical agents such as calcium chloride (CaCl₂) have also been used with success. However, CaCl₂ is generally not used on airfields because of its corrosive effect on aircraft. (frame 7-59)



STUDENT INQUIRY SHEET! Subcourse

Print your full name above.
Fill in your name and complete mailing address on the reverse side where indicated.

4 30

Leason,

Date

If you have a question or request for information concerning a subcourse or lesson, use this form. Your inquiry will be answered below. This form may also be used for comments, suggestions, requests for additional subcourses, and other informal communications concerning your extension course enrollment.

1. The following errors have been found in . lessons . _ texts . _ examination:

2. Request answers to the following questions:

REPLY TO STUDENT INQUIRY

ÚSÁES FL 18 29 Nov 72 Note. Fold this Inquiry Sheet with this School's address on the outside, staple or scotch tape it closed, and mail without an envelope.

COMMANDANT

U.S. ARMY ENGINEER SCHOOL

FORT BELVOIR VIRGINIA, 22060

FORT BELVOIR VIRGINIA, 22060



POSTAGE AND FEES PAID DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

FORT BELVOIR VIRGINIA 22060

ерентиру в рабу енејиета всноот то в от дене

OFFICIAL BUSINESS

FOLD HERE

STUDENT INQUIRY SHEET

- FOLD HERE

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
DEPARTMENT OF ARMY WIDE TRAINING SUPPORT
FORT BELVOIR, VIRGINIA 22060
U.S. ARMY ENGINEER SCHOOL

OFFICIAL BUSINESS

POSTAGE AND FEES PAID DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY DOD-374

Y. U.S.MAR

Grade or Rank	Name ,	,	Student No.
Mailing Address			
<u> </u>			
1.1.			Zip Code
		•	·